

(19)



Europäisches Patentamt

European Patent Office

Office européen des brevets



(11)

EP 0 708 091 A1

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

(43) Date of publication:  
24.04.1996 Bulletin 1996/17

(51) Int Cl. 6: C07D 209/42, C07D 209/08,  
A61K 31/40

(21) Application number: 95307409.3

(22) Date of filing: 18.10.1995

(84) Designated Contracting States:  
AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IE IT LI NL PT SE

- Ohashi, Naohito  
Takatsuki-shi (JP)
- Kojima, Atsuyuki  
Takarazuka-shi (JP)
- Noguchi, Tsuyoshi  
Toyonaka-shi (JP)
- Miyagishi, Akira  
Takatsuki-shi (JP)

(30) Priority: 18.10.1994 JP 280025/94

(71) Applicant: SUMITOMO PHARMACEUTICALS  
COMPANY, LIMITED  
Osaka 541 (JP)

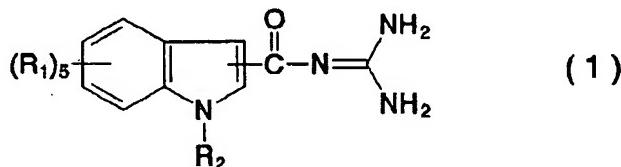
(74) Representative: Cresswell, Thomas Anthony  
J.A. KEMP & CO.  
14 South Square  
Gray's Inn  
London WC1R 6LX (GB)

(72) Inventors:

- Kitano, Masahumi  
Takatsuki-shi (JP)
- Nakano, Kazuhiko  
Nishiyodogawa-ku, Osaka-shi (JP)
- Yagi, Hideki  
Nishiyodogawa-ku, Osaka-shi (JP)

(54) Indoloylguanidine derivatives

(57) Indoloylguanidine derivatives of formula (1):



wherein each R<sub>1</sub> is a substituent which may be hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, acyl, carboxyl, alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>, and R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>; and the pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts thereof; inhibit Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity and are consequently useful in the treatment or prevention of a disease caused by increased Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity.

EP 0 708 091 A1

**Description**

The present invention relates to novel indoloylguanidine derivatives. The present invention also relates to sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger inhibitors comprising the indoloylguanidine derivatives as the active component which are useful for the treatment and prevention of diseases caused by increased sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity.

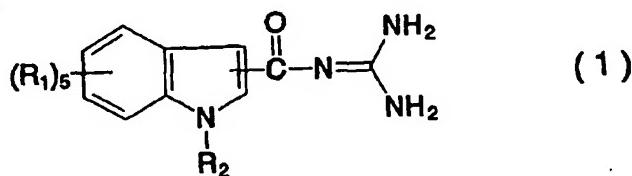
Certain polycyclic arylguanidine derivatives are known as those having polycondensed rings, for example, a naphthalene, 9,10-dihydroanthracene, benzofuran, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran, benzothiophene, benzothiazole, methylenedioxybenzene, pyrido thiophene, pyrimido thiophene, quinoline, 1,6-naphthyllidine, 1,8-naphthyllidine, 3,4-dihydrobenzopyran, 3,4-dihydroquinazolin-4-one, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinazolin-2-one, quinoxaline, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinoxaline, benzoazepine, benzotriazepine, benzimidazothiazine, benzopyranopyran or benzocarbazole ring. As one of the arylguanidine derivatives having indole rings there is known 1-guanidino-carbonyltryptophane but this compound is merely registered in Chemical Abstracts under Registered No. 18322-34-4, without any reference to its source.

Turning to some monocyclic arylguanidine derivatives, pyrazinoylguanidine derivatives represented by, e.g., Amiloride, are known to exhibit the sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger inhibition activity and anti-arrhythmic activity, cf., J. Membrane Biol., Vol. 105, 1 (1988); and Circulation, Vol. 79, 1257 (1989). Recent reports also reveal that benzoylguanidine derivatives possess the sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger inhibition and anti-arrhythmic activities, cf., J. Mol. Cell. Cardiol., Vol. 24, Suppl. I, S. 92 (1992); *ibid.*, Vol. 24, Suppl. I, S. 117 (1992); and Japanese Patent KOKAI Nos. 3-106858 and 5-339228.

An object of the present invention is to provide novel indoloylguanidine derivatives which inhibit the sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity and are therefore useful for the treatment and prevention of diseases caused by increased sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity, for example, hypertension, arrhythmia, angina pectoris, cardiac hypertrophy, diabetes mellitus, organ disorders associated with ischemia or ischemic reperfusion such as cardiac ischemic reperfusion injury (e.g., heart muscle ischemic reperfusion-associated disorders, acute renal failure, disorders induced by surgical treatment such as organ transplantation or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), cerebro-ischemic disorders such as disorders associated with cerebral infarction, disorders caused after cerebral apoplexy as sequelae, or cerebral edema; or diseases caused by excessive cell proliferation such as proliferation of fibroblast, proliferation of smooth muscle cells or proliferation of mesangium cells, which diseases are, e.g., atherosclerosis, pulmonary fibrosis, hepatic fibrosis, renal fibrosis, glomerular nephrosclerosis, organ hypertrophy, prostatic hypertrophy, diabetic complications or recurrent stricture after PTCA, or diseases caused by endothelial cell injury.

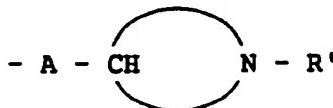
Another object of the present invention is to provide compositions comprising the indoloylguanidine derivatives as the active component which inhibit the sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity and are useful for the prevention and treatment of diseases caused by abnormal sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity.

The present invention relates to indoloylguanidine derivatives represented by the following formula (1):



wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> represents one or more, the same or different substituent(s) which is selected from the group consisting of a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, an aromatic group, a group shown by formula: -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>, and a group shown by formula:



wherein A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- (in which R<sub>50</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group; R' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

R<sub>2</sub> represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>;

$R_3$  represents a hydrogen atom, a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a  $C_3$ - $C_7$  cycloalkyl group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula:  $-CH_2R_{30}$ , in which  $R_{30}$  represents an alkenyl group or an alkynyl group;

5 each of  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  independently represents a hydrogen atom, a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a  $C_3$ - $C_7$  cycloalkyl group, a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula:  $-CH_2R_{60}$  (in which  $R_{60}$  represents a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkenyl group or a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkynyl group); or  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring thereof;

10  $R_{40}$  represents a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group or an aromatic group;

$n$  represents 0, 1 or 2;

and,

15  $R_{20}$  represents a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkenyl group or a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkynyl group;

in which:

the substituent(s) of the substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group means a halogen atom, hydroxy, a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl group, a  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group,  $-CONR_4R_5$  in which each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently represents a hydrogen atom or a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring;  $-NR_6R_7$ ; or a group shown by:

20



25

in which:

 $E$  represents a nitrogen atom or a  $CH$  group and $R''$  represents a hydrogen atom, a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group or a substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group substituted with hydroxy, a  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl group, a  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, a group shown by  $-NR_6R_7$ , or a group shown by  $-CONR_4R_5$ , in which each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently represents a hydrogen atom or a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) therein; and the ring of

30



35

is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

all of the aromatic groups hereinabove means an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 10, a 5- or 6-membered hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atom(s), a 5- or 6-membered hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 2 nitrogen atom(s) and one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom, or furyl; and,

40

all of the aromatic groups hereinabove may be substituted with a substituent selected from the group consisting of a  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a substituted  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a  $C_2$ - $C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl and a group selected from the group shown by formulae:  $-OR_3$ ,  $-NR_6R_7$ ,  $-CONR_6R_7$ ,  $-SO_2NR_6R_7$  and  $-S(O)R_{40}$ .

45

provided that  $R_1$  and the guanidinocarbonyl group may be substituted at any one of the 5- and 6-membered rings of the indole nucleus;

or,

a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt thereof.

50

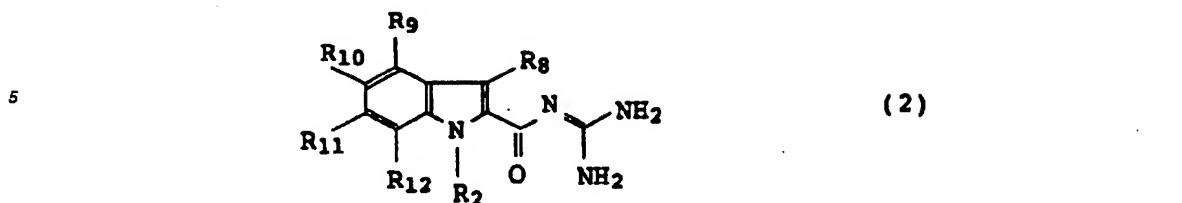
The present invention also relates to pharmaceutical compositions comprising as an effective ingredient the indoloylguanidine derivatives described above, which inhibit the sodium/proton exchanger system.

Generally, at least one  $R_1$  denotes hydrogen. Typically, two or three substituents  $R_1$  are hydrogen. It is also possible for four, or all five, substituents  $R_1$  to be hydrogen.

55

Among the indoloylguanidine derivatives of formula (1), the compounds represented by formulae (2) and (1') are particularly preferred; the compounds represented by the following general formulae (2) and (1') and the pharmaceutical compositions comprising these compounds are given below as the embodiments of the present invention.

The indoloylguanidine derivatives represented by general formula (2):



10 wherein:

each of R<sub>8</sub>, R<sub>9</sub>, R<sub>10</sub>, R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aroyl group having carbon atoms up to 11, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, an aromatic group, a group shown by formula: -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>, or a group shown by formula:



wherein A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>60</sub>)- (in which R<sub>60</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group; R' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;  
 25 R<sub>2</sub> represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>; R<sub>3</sub> represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or an alkynyl group;  
 30 each of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>60</sub> (in which R<sub>60</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group); or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring thereof;  
 35 R<sub>40</sub> represents an alkyl group or a substituted alkyl group; n represents 0, 1 or 2; and, R<sub>20</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group; in which:  
 40 the substituent(s) of the substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group means a halogen atom, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aroyl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, and -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring; -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; or a group shown by:

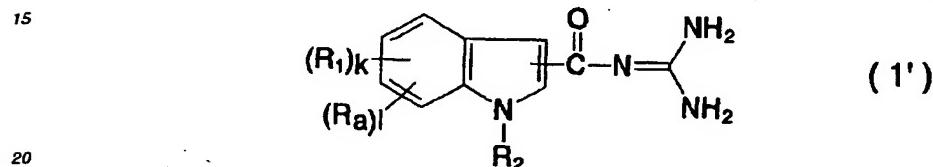


50 in which:  
 E represents a nitrogen atom or a CH group and  
 R'' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group substituted with hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aroyl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, a group shown by -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, or a group shown by -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub>, in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) therein; and the ring of



5 is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;  
 all of the aromatic groups hereinabove means an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 10, a 5- or 6-membered  
 hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atom(s), a hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 2 nitrogen atom(s) and  
 one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom, or furyl; and,  
 10 all of the aromatic groups hereinabove may be substituted with a substituent selected from the group consisting  
 of a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group,  
 carboxyl and a group selected from the group shown by formulae: -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -  
 S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>.

Indoloylguanidine derivative represented by general formula (1'):



wherein:

each of k and l, which may be the same or different, is an integer of 1 to 4, provided that k+l=5;

25 R<sub>1</sub> represents one or more, the same or different substituent(s) which is selected from the group consisting of a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, an aromatic group, a group shown by formula: -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>, and a group shown by formula:



35 wherein A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- (in which R<sub>50</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group; R' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

R<sub>2</sub> represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub> or an aromatic group;

when R<sub>2</sub> is an aromatic group, R<sub>a</sub> represents R<sub>1</sub>;

40 when R<sub>2</sub> is a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>;

R<sub>b</sub> may be one or more substituent(s), which may be the same or different and represents an aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a hetero-aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, in which the aryl moiety in these groups contains a substituent(s) selected from the group consisting of a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or,

45 R<sub>b</sub> represents a group shown by formula: -A-R<sub>b</sub>, in which A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- (in which R<sub>50</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); R<sub>b</sub> represents an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group in which the aryl moiety and the hetero-aryl group may contain a substituent(s) selected from the group consisting of a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or,

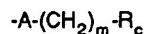
50 R<sub>a</sub> represents a group shown by formula:



55

wherein A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- (in which R<sub>50</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); R' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl

group; and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom; or, R<sub>a</sub> represents a group shown by formula:



wherein A represents an oxygen atom or a group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- (in which R<sub>50</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group); R<sub>c</sub> represents an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group in which the aryl moiety and the hetero-aryl group contain a substituent(s) selected from the group consisting of a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -OR<sub>31</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; m represents 1 to 8; and R<sub>31</sub> represents a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> (in which R<sub>30</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group);

R<sub>3</sub> represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, an aromatic group, or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group;

each of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>60</sub> (in which R<sub>60</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group); or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring thereof;

R<sub>40</sub> represents a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group;

n represents 0, 1 or 2;

and;

R<sub>20</sub> represents a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl group or a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl group;

in which:

the substituent(s) of the substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group means a halogen atom, hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, and -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) in the ring; -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; or a group shown by:



in which:

E represents a nitrogen atom or a CH group and

R'' represents a hydrogen atom, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group substituted with hydroxy, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, a group shown by -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, or a group shown by -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub>, in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atom(s) therein; and the ring of



is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

all of the aromatic groups hereinabove means an aryl group having carbon atoms up to 10, a 5- or 6-membered hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atom(s), a hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 2 nitrogen atom(s) and one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom, or furyl; and,

all of the aromatic groups hereinabove may be substituted with a substituent selected from the group consisting of a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, a C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl and a group selected from the group shown by formulae: -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; provided that R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> and the guanidino carbonyl group may be substituted at any one of the 5- and 6-membered rings of the indole nucleus.

In formula (I') the sum of k+l is 5. For instance, k is 4 and l is 1, k is 3 and l is 2, k is 2 and l is 3 or k is 1 and l is 4.

Generally, in formula (1'), at least one of the indole ring substituents is hydrogen ( $R_1=H$ ). More typically, when k is from 2 to 4, two or three of the substituents  $R_1$  are hydrogen.

A further preferred embodiment of the present invention is the indoloylguanidine derivatives represented by formula (2) above in which at least one of  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$ ,  $R_{11}$  and  $R_{12}$  is a group shown by  $R_a$ .

5 The respective groups in the indoloylguanidine derivatives of the present invention are described below in detail.

The alkyl group refers to a straight or branched alkyl group having carbon atoms of 8 or less, for example, methyl, ethyl, propyl, 2-propyl, butyl, 2-butyl, 2-methylpropyl, 1,1-dimethylethyl, pentyl, hexyl, heptyl and octyl.

The alkenyl group refers to an alkenyl group having carbon atoms up to 6, e.g., vinyl, allyl, propenyl, 2-propenyl, butenyl, pentenyl and hexenyl.

10 The alkynyl group refers to an alkynyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, e.g., ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl and pentynyl.

The cycloalkyl group refers to a cycloalkyl group having 3 to 7 carbon atoms, e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl.

15 Typical examples of the halogen atom include fluorine, chlorine and bromine.

The acyl group refers to a straight or branched alkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 8, e.g., acetyl, propanoyl and 2-methylpropanoyl; an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, e.g., phenylacetyl and phenylpropanoyl; and an aroyl group having carbon atoms of 11 or less, e.g., benzoyl, 1-naphthoyl and 2-naphthoyl.

The alkoxy carbonyl group refers to a straight or branched alkoxy carbonyl group having carbon atoms up to 6, e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl and 2-propoxycarbonyl.

20 The aromatic group refers to an aryl or hetero-aryl group which may have a substituent. Examples of the aryl group are those having carbon atoms up to 10, e.g., phenyl, tolyl or naphthyl, and examples of the hetero-aryl group are a 5- or 6-membered aromatic group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms or a 5- or 6-membered aromatic ring containing 1 to 2 nitrogen atoms and one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom, e.g., 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, imidazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, 2- or 3-furyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 1-, 3- or 4-oxazolyl, and 3-, 4- or 5-isoxazolyl.

25 Examples of the substituent in the substituted aryl or hetero-aryl group include an alkyl group, a substituted alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, an alkoxy carbonyl group, carboxyl and a group shown by formula:  $-OR_3$ ,  $-NR_6R_7$ ,  $-CONR_6R_7$ ,  $-SO_2NR_6R_7$  or  $-S(O)_nR_{40}$ .

30 Where  $R_1$  is a group shown by formula:  $-OR_3$  wherein  $R_3$  is an aromatic group, representative examples of the  $-OR_3$  group include phenoxy and a substituted phenoxy group. Examples of the substituted phenoxy group are a phenoxy group substituted with nitro,  $-NR_6R_7$  (in which  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are typically a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group) or a substituted alkyl group (the substituent of which is exemplified by hydroxy or  $-NR_6R_7$ ). Specific examples of the substituted phenoxy group are o-, m- or p-nitrophenoxy, o-, m- or p-aminophenoxy, o-, m- or p-(dimethylamino)phenoxy, o-, m- or p-(aminomethyl)phenoxy and o-, m- or p-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy.

35 The alkoxy group refers to a straight or branched alkoxy group having carbon atoms up to 6, e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, isopropoxy and tert-butoxy.

As the saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which is formed by combining  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  together and may contain other hetero atoms therein, there are, for example, a 5- to 7-membered cyclic group containing 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms and a 5- to 7-membered cyclic group containing one nitrogen atom and one oxygen atom. Specific examples of such cyclic amino group include 1-pyrrolidinyl, piperidino, 1-piperazinyl, morpholino, and 4-methylpiperazinyl.

40 Examples of the substituent in the substituted alkyl group include a cycloalkyl group, a halogen atom, hydroxy, an alkoxy group, cyano, carboxyl, an alkoxy carbonyl group, an acyl group, an aromatic group, or a group shown by formula:  $-CONR_4R_5$ , wherein each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently represents hydrogen atom or an alkyl group, or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain other hetero atoms in the ring;  $-NR_6R_7$ ; or a group shown by formula:

45



50

wherein:

E represents a nitrogen atom or a CH group and

55  $R'$  represents a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group or a substituted alkyl group substituted with hydroxy, a  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy group, cyano, carboxy, a  $C_2-C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl group, a  $C_2-C_8$  alkanoyl group, an arylalkanoyl group having carbon atoms up to 10, an aroyl group having carbon atoms up to 11, an aromatic group, a group shown by  $-NR_6R_7$ , or a group shown by  $-CONR_4R_5$ , in which each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently represents a hydrogen atom or a  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl group or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are combined together to form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which

may contain other hetero atom(s) therein; and the ring of



is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom. Particularly where R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> represent a substituted alkyl group, examples of the substituent include a cycloalkyl group, a halogen atom, hydroxy, an alkoxy group, carboxyl, an alkoxy carbonyl group, an acyl group, an aromatic group or a group shown by formula: -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>. Where R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> represent a substituted alkyl group, examples of the substituent include a cycloalkyl group, hydroxy, an alkoxy group, carboxyl, an alkoxy carbonyl group, an acyl group, an aryl group or a group shown by formula: -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> or -NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub>. As the alkyl moiety in the substituted alkyl group, the same examples as those for the alkyl group described above are given.

As such a substituted alkyl group, there are, for example, an alkyl group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms which is substituted with a cycloalkyl having 3 to 6 carbon atoms, a polyhaloalkyl group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, a hydroxylalkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, an alkoxyalkyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, a cyanoalkyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, a carboxyalkyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, an alkoxy carbonylalkyl group having 3 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkanoylalkyl group having 3 to 8 carbon atoms, an aralkyl group having carbon atoms up to 16, a phenyl- or naphthyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group which may be substituted, a carbamoyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group in which the nitrogen atom may be substituted with one or two C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, an amino-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group in which the nitrogen atom may be substituted with one or two C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl or C<sub>7</sub> to C<sub>11</sub> aralkyl, and a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group.

Representative examples of the substituted alkyl group include:

in the case of R<sub>1</sub>: a polyhaloalkyl group having 1 to 3 carbon atoms such as trifluoromethyl, trifluoroethyl or trichloromethyl; a hydroxylalkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl or 1-hydroxyethyl; and an aminoalkyl group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms such as aminomethyl, aminoethyl or 1-aminoethyl;

in the case of R<sub>2</sub>: a hydroxylalkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as hydroxyethyl, hydroxypropyl, hydroxybutyl, 2-hydroxypropyl or 3,4-dihydroxybutyl; an alkoxyalkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as methoxyethyl, ethoxyethyl or methoxypropyl; a carboxyalkyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms such as carboxyethyl or carboxypropyl; an alkoxy carbonylalkyl group having 3 to 7 carbon atoms such as methoxycarbonylmethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl or methoxycarbonylethyl; a phenyl- or naphthyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group (wherein a phenyl or naphthyl group may be substituted with a substituent, e.g., a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group, a halogen atom, nitro, amino, hydroxy or a C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkoxy group) such as benzyl, phenylethyl, phenylpropyl, phenylbutyl or, 1- or 2-naphthylmethyl; a carbamoyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group in which the nitrogen atom may be substituted with one or two C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl groups, such as carbamoylmethyl, carbamoylethyl or dimethylcarbamoylmethyl; or, an amino-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group in which the nitrogen atom may be substituted with one or two C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, such as aminoethyl, aminopropyl, dimethylaminoethyl, dimethylaminopropyl or diethylaminoethyl;

in the case of R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>40</sub>: a hydroxylalkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as hydroxyethyl, hydroxypropyl, 2-hydroxypropyl, hydroxybutyl or 2,3-dihydroxybutyl; a carboxyalkyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms such as carboxymethyl or carboxyethyl; a phenyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group such as benzyl, phenylethyl or phenylpropyl; a carbamoyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group such as carbamoylmethyl or carbamoylethyl; an amino-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group containing one or two nitrogen atoms in which the nitrogen atom may be substituted with one or two C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl or C<sub>7</sub> to C<sub>11</sub> aralkyl groups, such as aminoethyl, aminopropyl, dimethylaminoethyl, dimethylaminopropyl or benzylmethylaminoethyl; or a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>3</sub> alkyl group such as 1-pyrrolidinyl-ethyl or piperidinoethyl; and,

in the case of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>: a phenyl-C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group such as phenylethyl.

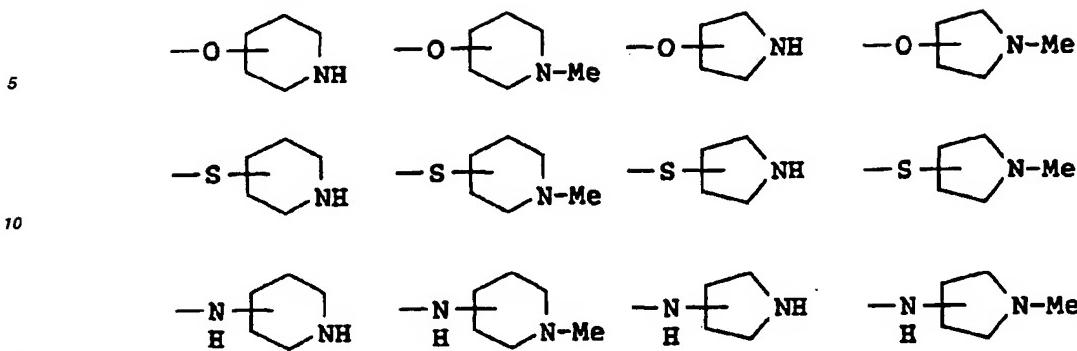
Examples of the saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which is formed by combining R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> together and may contain other hetero atoms in the ring thereof include the same groups as exemplified for the aforesaid cyclic amino group formed by R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>.

Examples of the group shown by formula: -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> include an alkylsulfonyl group having carbon atoms up to 8, such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl or isopropylsulfonyl; and the corresponding alkylsulfanyl and alkylthio groups. Examples of the group of

55



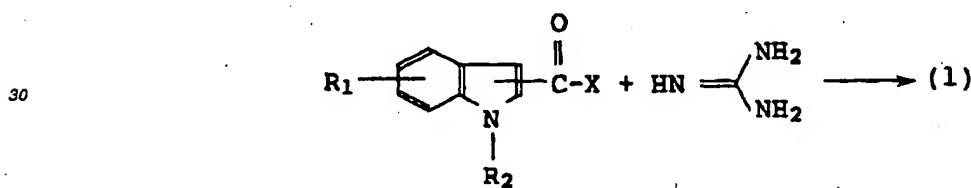
include the following groups:



Among the above groups, there are preferable (piperidine-3-yl)oxy, (piperidine-4-yl)oxy, (1-methylpiperidine-3-yl)oxy, (1-methylpiperidine-4-yl)oxy, (pyrrolidine-3-yl)oxy, (1-methylpyrrolidine-3-yl)oxy, (piperidine-3-yl)thio, (piperidine-4-yl)thio, (1-methylpiperidine-3-yl)thio, (1-methylpiperidine-4-yl)thio, (pyrrolidine-3-yl)thio, (1-methylpyrrolidine-3-yl)thio, (piperidine-3-yl)amino, (piperidine-4-yl)amino, (1-methylpiperidine-3-yl)amino, (1-methylpiperidine-4-yl)amino, (pyrrolidine-3-yl)amino and (1-methylpyrrolidine-3-yl)amino.

The compounds of the present invention represented by the formula (1) above can be prepared by the following processes.

(a) The compounds (1) of the present invention can be obtained by reacting reactive derivatives of indolecarboxylic acid shown by formula (3) with quanidine in an inert solvent.



35 (3) wherein X is a leaving group which can be readily replaced by a nucleophilic reagent and, R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> have the

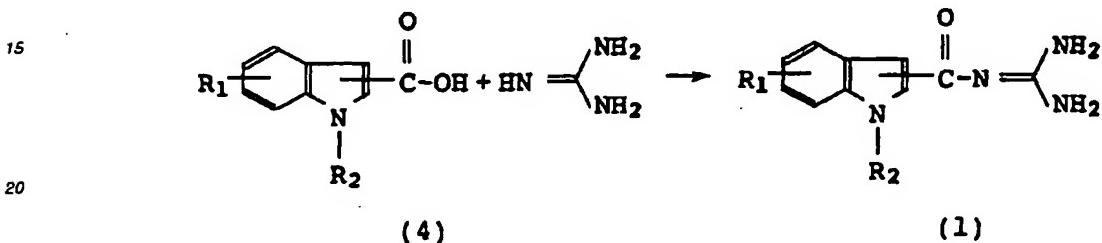
In this reaction, where the indolecarboxylic acid derivatives (3) contain reactive groups such as hydroxy or amino,  
these groups are previously protected by their protective groups. These protective groups are removed after the reac-

As the reactive derivatives of the carboxylic acid, there are acid halides, acid anhydrides (including mixed acid anhydrides) and ester derivatives. Specific examples are acid chlorides and acid bromides as the acid halides; as the mixed acid anhydrides, there are mixed acid anhydrides with alkoxy chloride type such as ethyloxycarbonyl chloride or isobutyloxycarbonyl chloride and those with  $\alpha$ -polyalkyl-substituted carboxylate type such as diethylacetyl chloride or trimethylacetyl chloride; as the ester derivatives there are activated esters such as p-nitrophenyl esters, N-hydroxysuccinimide esters or pentafluorophenyl esters, and ordinary esters such as methyl esters or ethyl esters. These reactive derivatives of the carboxylic acids can be readily obtained from the corresponding carboxylic acids in a conventional manner.

In the case of performing the reaction between the acid halides or the acid anhydrides (including the mixed acid anhydrides) and guanidine, the reaction can be carried out in a solvent under cooling or at room temperature, in the presence of a base or an excess of guanidine. Inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydrogen carbonate, or organic bases such as triethylamine or pyridine may be used as the base. Examples of the solvent include aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene or xylene, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform or 1,2-dichloro-ethane, amides such as dimethylformamide or dimethyl-acetamide, basic solvents such as pyridine, or a mixture of these solvents.

Where the ester derivatives are reacted, the reaction is carried out in a solvent usually at a elevated temperature, in the presence of an equimolar amount of or an excess of guanidine. In the case of using the activated esters, the reaction is performed preferably in an ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane or 1,4-dioxane, an ester type solvent such as ethyl acetate, dimethylformamide or a solvent mixture thereof. In the case of using other esters, it is preferred to perform the reaction in an alcohol type solvent such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol, an ether type solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane or 1,4-dioxane, dimethylformamide or a solvent mixture thereof. After removal of the solvent, if necessary and desired, the reaction system may be heated at about 130°C for a short period of time.

- (b) The compounds (1) of the present invention can be obtained by reacting indolecarboxylic acids shown by formula (4) with guanidine in an inert solvent at room temperature or with heating, preferably in the presence of a condensing agent.

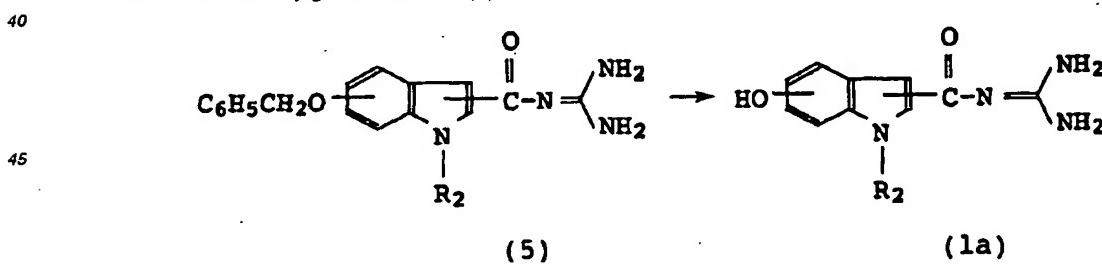


wherein R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> have the same significance as described above.

In this reaction, where the indolecarboxylic acid derivatives (4) contain reactive groups such as hydroxy or amino, these groups are previously protected by their protective groups. These protective groups are removed after the reaction is completed. The desired indolylguanidine derivatives (1) can thus be prepared.

The reaction is carried out in a solvent, e.g., aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene or xylene, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform or 1,2-dichloroethane, amides such as dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide, basic solvents such as pyridine, or a mixture of these solvents, in the presence of a condensing agent, e.g., dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIPC), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (WSC), benzotriazol-1-yl-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP), diphenylphosphorylazide (DPPA) or N,N-carbonyldiimidazole, cf., Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., Vol. 1, 351 (1962), and, if desired, in the presence of an additive such as N-hydroxysuccinimide (HONSu), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT), 3-hydroxy-4-oxo-3,4-dihydro-1,2,3-benzotriazine (HOOBt), etc.

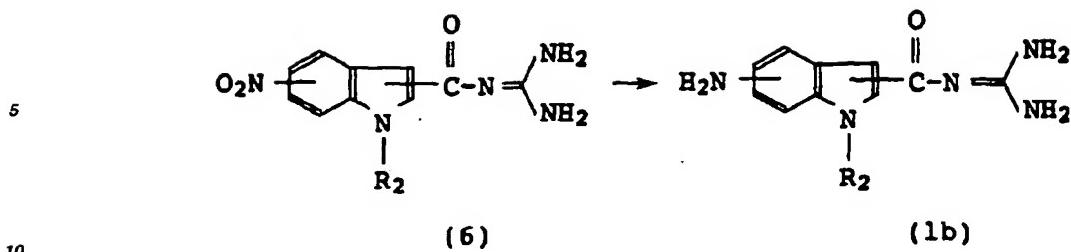
- (c) The compounds (1a) of the present invention can be obtained by debenylation of benzyloxyindolylguanidine derivatives shown by general formula (5).



wherein R<sub>2</sub> has the same significance as described hereinabove.

The debenylation is carried out in a manner similar to the processes described in publications, such as catalytic hydrogenation using a palladium/carbon catalyst, cf., J. Chem. Soc., 1953, 4058 or decomposition under acidic conditions using hydrochloric acid/acetic acid, cf., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 73, 5765 (1951).

- (d) The compounds (1b) of the present invention can be obtained by reducing nitroindolylguanidine derivatives represented by formula (6).



wherein R<sub>2</sub> has the same significance as described hereinabove.

As the reducing conditions applicable, there are conditions, e.g., reduction under acidic conditions using zinc, iron, tin or tin (II) chloride, cf., Ann., 641, 81 (1961), J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 66, 1781 (1944); reducing using sulfides such as sodium dithionite ( $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ ), cf., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 72, 1361 (1950); catalytic hydrogenation using catalysts such as palladium/carbon, cf., Synth. Commun., 1 47 (1971) or Raney nickel, cf., Org. Synth., IV, 226 (1963).

As the protective groups for the hydroxy, amino or carboxyl group reactive with the reaction in the process (a) or (b) described hereinabove, there may be used protective groups conventionally used in the field of organic synthesis chemistry. Introduction and removal of these protective groups can be made in a conventional manner, e.g., Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley & Sons, 1991.

Examples of the protective group for the hydroxy group include methoxymethyl and tetrahydropyranyl. Examples of the protective group for the amino group include tert-butyloxycarbonyl and the like. These protective groups for the hydroxy group can be removed by conducting the reaction in a solvent such as hydrated methanol, hydrated ethanol or hydrated tetrahydrofuran in the presence of an acid, e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid or acetic acid. The amino protective groups can be removed by performing the reaction in a solvent such as hydrated tetrahydrofuran, methylene chloride, chloroform or hydrated methanol, in the presence of an acid, e.g., hydrochloric acid or trifluoroacetic acid.

For protecting the carboxyl group, the protection is effected in the form of tert-butyl esters, ortho-esters or acid amides. Such protective groups are removed, in the case of the tert-butyl esters, e.g., by performing the reaction in a hydrated solvent in the presence of hydrochloric acid; in the case of the ortho-esters, the protective groups are removed, e.g., by treating the protected compounds with an acid in a solvent such as hydrated methanol, hydrated tetrahydrofuran or hydrated 1,2-dimethoxyethane and then with an alkali such as sodium hydroxide. In the case of the acid amides, the protective groups are removed, e.g., by conducting the reaction in a solvent such as water, hydrated methanol or hydrated tetrahydrofuran in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid.

The indolecarboxylic acids which are the starting compounds in the processes (a) and (b) described hereinabove are commercially available. Examples of such commercially available indolecarboxylic acids are indole-5-carboxylic acid, 5-chloro-2-indole carboxylic acid; indole-3-carboxylic acid, indole-2 carboxylic acid, indole-4-carboxylic acid, 5-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylic acid. Alternatively, the indolecarboxylic acids may be prepared by known methods.

According to, e.g., the method of Reissert (Reissert's indole synthesis), there can be prepared 4-chloro-2-indole-carboxylic acid, cf., J. Chem. Soc., 1955, 3490; 6-n-aryl-2-indolecarboxylic acid, cf., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 75, 4921 (1953); 7-indolecarboxylic acid, cf., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 77, 5700 (1955); 5-cyano-2-indolecarboxylic acid, cf., J. Org. Chem., Vol. 18, 354 (1953); 6-cyano-2-indolecarboxylic acid, cf., J. Chem. Soc., 1924, 2285; 6-benzyloxy-2-indolecarboxylic acid, cf., J. Chem. Soc., 1937, 1726 and the like.

The method of Fischer (Fischer's indole synthesis) gives nitro-2-indolecarboxylic acids in J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 80, 4621 (1958), 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid in J. Chem. Soc., 1955, 3499, 4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid in J. Amer. Chem. Soc., Vol. 79, 1745 (1957) and the like.

The 2-indolecarboxylic acids may also be prepared by known methods using benzaldehyde derivatives as the starting compounds, see, e.g., *Tetrahedron*, Vol. 42, 3259 (1986).

The 4-indolecarboxylic acids, 5-indole-carboxylic acids and 6-indolecarboxylic acids can be prepared based on the methods described in, e.g., J. Chem. Tech. Biotechnol., Vol. 36, 562 (1986), Tetrahedron Letters, Vol. 27, 1653 (1986), etc.

The 1-hydroxyindolecarboxylic acids can be prepared based on the method described in *Chem. Ber.*, Vol. 56, 1024 (1923).

The aryloxyindolecarboxylic acids can be prepared by reacting alkali metal salts (e.g., sodium or potassium salts) of hydroxyindolecarboxylic acids with aryl halides in an inert solvent such as dimethyl-formamide or tetrahydrofuran in the presence or absence of a catalyst such as copper or copper iodide. In case that the aryl halide employed for the reaction contains a reactive group(s) such as carboxyl, hydroxy or amino, these groups may be previously protected with appropriate protective groups. Then the coupling reaction is carried out and the reaction with guanidine follows.

Thereafter the protective groups are removed to prepare the objective indoloylguanidine derivatives. The other indole-carboxylic acids are either commercially available or may be prepared with reference to the synthesis methods described in reviews (1), (2) and (3) given below:

- 5       (1) W.A. Remers, R.K. Brown, "Indoles", edited by W.J. Houlihan, Part I, Part II and Part III, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1972
- (2) R.J. Sundberg, "The Chemistry of Indoles", Academic Press, New York, 1970
- (3) A.R. Katritzky, C.W. Rees, "Comprehensive Heterocyclic Chemistry", edited by C.W. Bird, G.W.H. Cheeseman, Volume 4, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1984

10       The compounds of formula (1) prepared as described above are illustratively given below.

- 15       1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-3-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-4-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-5-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-6-indoloylguanidine  
4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
5-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 20       6-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
7-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
5-chloro-2-indoloylguanidine  
1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1,5-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 25       1,6-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1,7-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
5-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 30       7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-4-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-5-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-6-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-methyl-7-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine
- 35       4-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
5-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
7-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-benzyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 40       1-benzyl-3-indoloylguanidine  
1-benzyl-5-indoloylguanidine  
1-isopropyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-isopropyl-3-indoloylguanidine  
1-isopropyl-5-indoloylguanidine
- 45       2-indoloylguanidine  
3-indoloylguanidine  
5-indoloylguanidine  
4-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
5-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 50       6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
1-(3-diethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- 55       1-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-(3-aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
6-(2-aminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine

- 6-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 5 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-diethylaminopropyl)-4-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-methoxy-1-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 10 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-aminoethoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 15 4-methoxy-1-methyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-methoxy-1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-aminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 20 7-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-methoxy-1-methyl-7-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-isopropoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-diethylaminopropyl)-4-isopropoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-isopropoxy-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-isopropoxy-1-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 25 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-aminoethoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 30 6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-aminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 35 7-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-7-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 40 1-(3-diethylaminopropyl)-4-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-methyl-1-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1,4-dimethyl-6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1,4-dimethyl-6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine  
 45 6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-aminoethoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1,4-dimethyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1,4-dimethyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-aminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 50 1,4-dimethyl-7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1,4-dimethyl-7-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-tert-butyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-tert-butyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 55 4-tert-butyl-1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-tert-butyl-1-(3-diethylaminopropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-tert-butyl-1-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine

- 6-*(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(2-aminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-1-methyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-7-[3-(N-pyrrolidinyl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*10 1-methyl-6-phenoxy-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-7-phenoxy-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-6-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*15 1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(2-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(2-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*20 6-(3-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(3-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*25 7-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*30 6-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*35 7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-6-phenoxy-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-7-phenoxy-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*40 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*45 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*50 6-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*7-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*55 7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-6-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-7-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*  
*4-chloro-6-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine*

4-chloro-7-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-phenoxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 5 1-methyl-7-phenoxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-(3-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 10 1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(2-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 15 6-(3-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(3-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[2-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 20 >6-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 25 7-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 30 6-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 35 7-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[3-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[3-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 40 1-methyl-6-[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[2-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[2-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[3-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 45 1-methyl-7-[3-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[4-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[4-(N-piperidinylmethyl)phenoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[2-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 50 6-[3-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine



7-[3-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 5 7-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 10 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 15 7-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 20 6-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 25 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 30 6-[[5-(aminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[5-(aminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 35 4-chloro-7-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 40 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 45 7-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 50 4-chloro-6-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 55 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine

7-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(aminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[5-(aminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 5 4-chloro-7-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[2-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[3-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 10 6-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[4-(diethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 15 1-methyl-7-[(4-nitropyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(4-aminopyridin-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(aminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 20 6-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[4-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 25 1-methyl-7-[[4-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-2-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 30 1-methyl-7-[(5-nitropyridin-3-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(5-aminopyridin-3-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(aminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 35 7-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 40 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 45 7-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[2-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[2-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 50 1-methyl-6-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 55 1-methyl-7-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(5-aminothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine

- 7-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(aminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 5 7-[[5-(aminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 10 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 15 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 20 4-chloro-6-[[2-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[2-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 25 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(5-aminothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 30 6-[(5-(aminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(5-(aminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-7-[[5-(dimethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-6-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 35 4-chloro-7-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)thiophen-2-yl]oxy]-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 40 7-[[5-(diethylaminomethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[[5-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-3-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(pyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 45 1-methyl-6-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(2-nitropyridin-4-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[(2-aminopyridin-4-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 50 7-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 7-[[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[[2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridin-4-yl]oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 55 1-methyl-7-[(thiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-6-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 1-methyl-7-[(5-nitrothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine  
 6-[(5-aminothiophen-2-yl)oxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine



The compounds represented by formula (1) may be converted into acid addition salts with pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic acids or organic acids, if necessary and desired. Examples of such acid addition salts are salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid or phosphoric acid; salts with organic acids such as formic acid, acetic acid, fumaric acid, maleic acid, oxalic acid, citric acid, malic acid, tartaric acid, aspartic acid or glutamic acid; salts with sulfonic acids such as methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydroxybenzenesulfonic acid, dihydroxybenzenesulfonic acid, etc.

The compounds of the present invention inhibit the sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger system and are thus useful for the treatment and prevention of the diseases caused by increased sodium/proton ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$ ) exchanger activity, for example, hypertension, organ disorders associated with ischemia or ischemic reperfusion, arrhythmia, angina pectoris, diabetes mellitus, cardiac hypertrophy, cerebro-ischemic disorders, diseases caused by excessive cell proliferation, diseases induced by endothelial cell injury.

The compounds of the present invention can be prepared in the form of pharmaceutical preparations which are suitable for oral or parenteral administration. These pharmaceutical preparations can be administered orally in the form of powders, granules, tablets, capsules, syrup or suspensions; alternatively, parenterally in the form of injections using its solution, emulsion or suspension. The pharmaceutical preparations may also be administered rectally in the form of suppositories.

These pharmaceutical compositions can be prepared by mixing the compound of the present invention as the active ingredient with a conventionally acceptable carrier, a recipient, a binder, a stabilizer and a diluent. In the case of using the compound of the present invention in the form of injection, a pharmaceutically acceptable buffer, a dissolution aid or an isotonic agent may also be incorporated in the composition.

Dosage and time of administration may vary depending upon the disease, condition, age, body weight and mode of administration but the composition is administered in a daily dose of 0.1 to 2000 mg, preferably 1 to 200 mg, for adult at once or by dividing into several times.

The present invention is described below more specifically by referring to Reference Examples, Examples and Experiments but not deemed to be limited thereto.

#### Reference Example 1

##### Preparation of 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid (Fischer's indole synthesis)

###### a) Preparation of ethyl 2-(2-chlorophenyl)hydrazonepropionate

To a solution of 14.4 g (0.10 mol) of ethyl 2-methylacetacetate in 100 ml of ethanol was added dropwise 50 g of 50% potassium hydroxide aqueous solution at 0°C. After 70 g of ice was added to the solution, a diazonium salt solution prepared by mixing 12.8 g (0.10 mol) of o-chloroaniline, 13.6 g (0.20 mol) of sodium nitrite and 60 g of conc. hydrochloric acid was added to the mixture at once. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. The precipitates were collected and dried under reduced pressure to give 9.10 g (37.7%) of the desired ethyl 2-(2-chlorophenyl)hydrazonepropionate.

###### b) Preparation of ethyl 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate

After 8.00 g (33.2 mmol) of ethyl 2-(2-chlorophenyl)hydrazonepropionate obtained above was added to 20 g of polyphosphoric acid, the mixture was gradually heated to 190°C, which was kept for 5 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to 60°C and water was then added thereto. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to obtain 3.40 g (45.7%) of the desired ethyl 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.40-1.46 (3H, m), 4.43 (2H, dd,  $J=7.3, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.09 (1H, t,  $J=7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.25 (1H, d,  $J=2.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.32 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0, 7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.58-7.61 (1H, m), 9.02 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds were prepared by carrying out the reaction in a manner similar to Reference Example 1.

###### (1) Ethyl 5-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.42-1.47 (3H, m), 4.45 (2H, dd,  $J=7.3, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.38 (1H, dd,  $J=0.7, 2.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.50 (1H, d,  $J=9.3\text{Hz}$ ), 8.21-8.25 (1H, m), 8.69 (1H, d,  $J=2.0\text{Hz}$ ), 9.3 (1H, br-s).

## (2) Ethyl 7-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42-1.48 (3H, m), 4.43-4.51 (2H, m), 7.25-7.28 (1H, m), 7.37 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 8.04-8.08 (1H, m), 8.31 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.9Hz), 10.4 (1H, br-s).

## (3) Ethyl 4-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>10</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.38-1.43 (3H, m), 3.96 (3H, s), 4.36-4.44 (2H, m), 6.51 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.34-7.35 (1H, m), 8.9 (1H, br-s).

## (4) Ethyl 6-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.38-1.43 (3H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.39 (2H, dd, J=7.3, 14.2Hz), 6.80-6.84 (2H, m), 7.16-7.17 (1H, m), 7.52-7.56 (1H, m), 8.9 (1H, br-s).

## (5) Ethyl 4-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.44-1.49 (3H, m), 4.43-4.51 (2H, m), 7.41-7.47 (1H, m), 7.77-7.80 (1H, m), 7.92 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 2.3Hz), 8.20 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 7.9Hz), 9.4 (1H, br-s).

## (6) Ethyl 6-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.46 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.48 (2H, dd, J=7.3, 14.2Hz), 7.29-7.30 (1H, m), 7.78 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 8.05 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 8.42 (1H, t, J=1.0Hz), 9.6 (1H, br-s).

## (7) Ethyl 4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>30</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42-1.47 (3H, m), 4.45 (2H, dd, J=6.9, 14.2Hz), 7.35-7.41 (2H, m), 7.46-7.49 (1H, m), 7.62 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 9.32 (1H, br-s).

## (8) Ethyl 6-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>35</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41-1.47 (3H, m), 4.41-4.49 (2H, m), 7.26-7.27 (1H, m), 7.36-7.40 (1H, m), 7.73-7.81 (2H, m), 9.26 (1H, br-s).

## (9) Ethyl 7-phenyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>40</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.28-1.43 (3H, m), 4.41 (2H, dd, J=6.9, 14.2Hz), 7.20-7.26 (1H, m), 7.35-7.57 (6H, m), 7.66-7.70 (2H, m), 9.11 (1H, br-s).

## (10) Ethyl 4-acetyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>45</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41-1.47 (3H, m), 2.72 (3H s), 4.40-4.48 (2H, m), 7.38 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 8.2Hz), 7.66 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 8.3Hz), 7.78 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.3Hz), 7.99-8.00 (1H, m), 9.42 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 2

## Preparation of 4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid (Reissert's indole synthesis)

(50) a) Preparation of (6-methyl-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvic acid

<sup>55</sup> A solution of 15.1 g (0.10 mol) of 2-methyl-3-nitrotoluene and 14.6 g (0.10 mol) of diethyl oxalate in 10 ml of ethanol was added to a solution of 11.2 g (0.10 mol) of potassium tert-butoxide in 50 ml of ethanol. After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 hour, the reaction mixture was refluxed for 1.5 hour. After 60 ml of water was added to the reaction mixture, the mixture was refluxed for further an hour. After cooling, ice water was poured onto the reaction mixture followed by washing twice with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid and then extracted three times with chloroform. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 10.4 g (46.6%) of the desired 6-methyl-

2-nitrophenylpyruvic acid.

b) Preparation of 4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid

5       A 5% aqueous ammonia of 10.4 g (46.6 mmol) of 6-methyl-2-nitrophenylpyruvic acid obtained above was added to a suspension of 96.4 g (0.33 mol) of ferric sulfate heptahydrate in 324 ml of water containing 37 ml of 28% aqueous ammonia. The mixture was refluxed for 10 minutes. After insoluble matters were filtered off, the filtrate was acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid followed by extracting three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 4.30 g (24.5%, yield based on 2-methyl-3-nitrotoluene) of the desired 4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid.

10       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 2.49 (3H, s), 6.83 (1H, d, J=6.3Hz), 7.08-7.14 (2H, m), 7.25 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 11.7 (1H, br-s), 12.8 (1H, br-s).

15      The following compounds were prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 2.

(1) 4-Chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

20       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 7.06 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.22-7.28 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 12.2 (1H, br-s), 13.2 (1H, br-s).

(2) 6-Chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

25       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 7.04-7.10 (2H, m), 7.43 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 11.9 (1H, br-s), 13.0 (1H, br-s).

(3) 5-Methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

30       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 2.36 (3H, s), 6.98 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 2.0Hz), 7.04-7.08 (1H, m), 7.30-7.33 (1H, m), 7.40 (1H, s), 11.6 (1H, br-s), 12.9 (1H, br-s).

(4) 6-Methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

35       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 2.40 (3H, s), 6.87-6.90 (1H, m), 7.00-7.01 (1H, m), 7.21 (1H, s), 7.50 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 11.6 (1H, br-s), 12.7 (1H, br-s).

(5) 7-Methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

40       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 2.52 (3H, s), 6.93-7.02 (2H, m), 7.09 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 11.5 (1H, br-s), 12.8 (1H, br-s).

(6) 7-Benzoyloxy-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

45       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 5.27 (2H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 6.94-7.00 (1H, m), 7.07 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 7.3Hz), 7.17-7.23 (1H, m), 7.31-7.43 (3H, m), 7.65 (2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 11.82 (1H, br-s), 12.81 (1H, br-s).

(7) 4-Benzoyloxy-2-indolecarboxylic acid:

50       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$ : 5.24 (2H, s), 6.62 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.00-7.17 (3H, m), 7.31-7.44 (3H, m), 7.50-7.53 (2H, m), 11.78 (1H, br-s), 12.85 (1H, br-s).

55      Reference Example 3

Preparation of Methyl 6-indolecarboxylate

a) Preparation of methyl 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoate

To a solution of 10.0 g (49.6 mmol) of 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid in 100 ml of methanol was added dropwise 11.8 g (99.2 mmol) of thionyl chloride at 0°C. The reaction mixture was refluxed for 2 hours and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Ice water was added to the resulting residue. The mixture was made basic by the addition

of concentrated ammonium hydroxide. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure to give 10.9 g (>99%) of the desired methyl 4-chloro-3-nitro-benzoate.

5 b) Preparation of methyl 3-nitro-4-trimethylsilylithynylbenzoate

A mixture of 10.7 g (49.6 mmol) of methyl 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoate obtained above, 8.77 g (89.3 mmols) of trimethylsilylacetylene, 0.4 g of dichloro-bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium and 120 ml of triethylamine was heated at 75°C for 3 hours with stirring. The reaction mixture was cooled. After insoluble matters were filtered off, the extract was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to obtain 8.40 g (61.0%) of methyl 3-nitro-4-trimethylsilylithynylbenzoate.

c) Preparation of methyl 4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-3-nitrobenzoate

15 To a methanol solution of 2.92 g (54.1 mmol) of sodium methoxide was added 3.00 g (10.8 mmol) of methyl 3-nitro-4-trimethylsilylithynylbenzoate prepared above. The mixture was refluxed for 30 minutes. After cooling to 0°C, 5.52 g (54.1 mmol) of acetic acid was added to the reaction mixture and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Ice water was poured onto the resulting residue followed by extraction three times with dichloromethane. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.40 g (82.4%) of methyl 4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-3-nitrobenzoate.

d) Preparation of methyl 3-amino-4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)benzoate

25 To a mixture of 4.40 g (16.3 mmol) of methyl 4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-3-nitrobenzoate in a solvent mixture of 200 ml of methanol and 2 ml of acetic acid was added 0.50 g of 5% palladium-carbon to perform catalytic hydrogenation at ambient temperature under normal pressure and then treat the reaction mixture in a conventional manner. Thus, 4.16 g of methyl 3-amino-4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)benzoate was obtained.

30 e) Preparation of methyl 6-indolecarboxylate

After 4.00 g (16.7 mmol) of methyl 3-amino-4-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)benzoate obtained above was added to a solution of 5 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid in 15 ml of ethanol, the mixture was heated at 60°C for an hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water followed by extraction three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure to give 3.00 g (>99%) of methyl 6-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.95 (3H, s), 7.13-7.45 (4H, m), 7.68-7.72 (1H, m), 8.94 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 4

40 Preparation of methyl 1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

After 2.00 g (12.4 mmol) of 2-indole-carboxylic acid was added to a suspension of 0.99 g (24.8 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride in 40 ml of dimethyl-formamide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature until the mixture became a transparent solution. A solution of 7.05 g (49.6 mmol) of methyl iodide in 10 ml of dimethylformamide was then added dropwise to the transparent solution at room temperature followed by stirring at the same temperature for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was recrystallized from n-hexane to give 1.70 g (72.4%) of methyl 1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.91 (3H, s), 4.08 (3H, s), 7.12-7.18 (1H, m), 7.30 (1H, s), 7.32-7.41 (2H, m), 7.66-7.70 (1H, m).

The following compounds were prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 4.

(1) Methyl 1-methyl-5-indolecarboxylate:

55 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.82 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 6.58 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 3.3Hz), 7.11 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.32 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.91-7.95 (1H, m), 8.39-8.40 (1H, m).

## (2) Methyl 1-methyl-3-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.82 (3H, s), 3.91 (3H, s), 7.24-7.37 (3H, m), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.14-8.20 (1H, m).

## 5 (3) Methyl 1-methyl-4-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.84 (3H, s), 3.98 (3H, s), 7.10-7.11 (1H, m), 7.20 (1H, d,  $J=3.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.24-7.29 (1H, m), 7.53 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.91 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0, 7.6\text{Hz}$ ).

## 10 (4) Methyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.60 (3H, s), 3.75 (3H, s), 6.80-6.83 (1H, m), 6.89-6.95 (2H, m), 7.05 (1H, d,  $J=0.7\text{Hz}$ ).

## 15 (5) Methyl 5-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.64 (3H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 6.93 (1H, s), 6.97-7.02 (2H, m), 7.36 (1H, t,  $J=1.3\text{Hz}$ ).

## 20 (6) Methyl 6-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.91 (3H, s), 4.04 (3H, s), 7.09-7.13 (1H, m), 7.25-7.26 (1H, m), 7.38-7.39 (1H, m), 7.56-7.59 (1H, m).

## 25 (7) Methyl 7-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.91 (3H, s), 4.47 (3H, s), 6.99 (1H, m), 7.26-7.30 (2H, m), 7.52-7.56 (1H, m).

## 30 (8) Methyl 1,4-dimethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.56 (3H, s), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.07 (3H, s), 6.93-6.96 (1H, m), 7.17-7.29 (2H, m), 7.33 (1H, d,  $J=0.7\text{Hz}$ ).

## 35 (9) Methyl 1,5-dimethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.44 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.05 (3H, s), 7.16-7.29 (3H, m), 7.42-7.45 (1H, m).

## 40 (10) Methyl 1,6-dimethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.51 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.05 (3H, s), 6.99 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0, 8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.12-7.16 (1H, m), 7.24-7.26 (1H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J=8.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.42-7.45 (1H, m).

## 45 (11) Methyl 1,7-dimethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.80 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.35 (3H, s), 6.97 (2H, m), 7.25-7.27 (1H, m), 7.26 (1H, s), 7.48 (1H, d,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ).

## 50 (12) Methyl 1-methyl-5-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.85 (3H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.05 (3H, s), 7.00-7.09 (2H, m), 7.19-7.30 (2H, m).

## 55 (13) Benzyl 1-benzyl-5-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 5.33 (2H, s), 5.38 (2H, s), 6.64 (1H, d,  $J=3.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.06-7.49 (12H, m), 7.92 (1H, dd,  $J=1.7, 8.9\text{Hz}$ ), 8.45-8.46 (1H, m).

## 60 (14) Isopropyl 1-isopropyl-5-indolecarboxylate:

1H NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.38 (6H, d,  $J=6.3\text{Hz}$ ), 1.53 (6H, d,  $J=6.6\text{Hz}$ ), 4.62-4.75 (1H, m), 5.21-5.35 (1H, m), 6.60 (1H, d,  $J=3.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.27 (1H, d,  $J=3.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.36 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.90 (1H, dd,  $J=1.7, 8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 8.38 (1H, d,  $J=1.7\text{Hz}$ ).

Reference Example 5Preparation of methyl 1-methyl-6-indolecarboxylate

5       The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 4 except for using 3.00 (17.1 mmol) of methyl 6-indolecarboxylate, 0.68 g (17.1 mmol) of 60% sodium hydroxide, 4.86 g (34.4 mmol) of methyl iodido and 60 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus 2.75 g (86.9%) of methyl 1-methyl-6-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

10       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.86 (3H, s), 3.95 (3H, s), 6.51-6.53 (1H, m), 7.21 (1H, d,  $J=3.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.63 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.78-7.82 (1H, m), 8.10 (1H, s).

10      The following compounds were prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5.

## (1) Ethyl 4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

15       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.39 (3H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 3.96 (3H, s), 4.06 (3H, s), 4.35 (2H, dd,  $J=7.3, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 6.50 (1H, d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 6.98 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.24-7.30 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d,  $J=0.7\text{Hz}$ ).

## (2) Ethyl 6-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

20       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.37-1.42 (3H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.03 (3H, s), 4.31-4.39 (2H, m), 6.75 (1H, s), 6.80-6.84 (1H, m), 7.25 (1H, s), 7.53 (1H, d,  $J=8.9\text{Hz}$ ).

## (3) Ethyl 1-methyl-4-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

25       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.45 (3H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 4.17 (3H, s), 4.39-4.47 (2H, m), 7.41-7.48 (1H, m), 7.74-7.77 (1H, m), 7.96 (1H, d,  $J=1.0\text{Hz}$ ), 8.18-8.21 (1H, m).

## (4) Ethyl 1-methyl-6-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

30       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.41-1.46 (3H, m), 4.17 (3H, s), 4.38-4.46 (2H, m), 7.34 (1H, d,  $J=1.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.75 (1H, dd,  $J=0.7, 8.9\text{Hz}$ ), 8.03 (1H, dd,  $J=2.0, 8.9\text{Hz}$ ), 8.39 (1H, d,  $J=2.0\text{Hz}$ ).

## (5) Ethyl 1-methyl-5-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

35       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.41-1.46 (3H, m), 4.14 (3H, s), 4.41 (2H, dd,  $J=7.3, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 7.42-7.46 (2H, m), 8.22-8.26 (1H, m), 8.66 (1H, d,  $J=2.0\text{Hz}$ ).

## (6) Ethyl 1-methyl-7-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate:

40       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.43 (3H, t,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}$ ), 4.00 (3H, s), 4.37-4.45 (2H, m), 7.20 (1H, t,  $J=7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.43 (1H, s), 7.85-7.93 (2H, m).

## (7) Methyl 1-benzyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

45       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.86 (3H, s), 5.84 (2H, s), 7.02-7.06 (2H, m), 7.13-7.44 (7H, m), 7.70-7.73 (1H, m).

## (8) Methyl 1-benzyl-3-indolecarboxylate:

50       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.91 (3H, s), 5.34 (2H, s), 7.13-7.17 (2H, m), 7.20-7.36 (6H, m), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.17-8.21 (1H, m).

## (9) Methyl 1-isopropyl-3-indolecarboxylate:

55       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.56 (6H, d,  $J=6.9\text{Hz}$ ), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.64-4.74 (1H, m), 7.24-7.31 (2H, m), 7.39-7.42 (2H, m), 7.96 (1H, s), 8.15-8.20 (1H, m).

## (10) Ethyl 1,3-dimethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

60       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.42-1.47 (3H, m), 2.59 (3H, s), 4.01 (3H, s), 4.37-4.45 (2H, m), 7.10-7.18 (1H, m), 7.31-7.38 (2H, m), 7.64-7.67 (1H, m).

(11) Ethyl 1-methyl-4-methylsulfonyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41-1.46 (3H, m), 3.14 (3H, s), 4.16 (3H, s), 4.41 (2H, dd, J=7.3, 14.2Hz), 7.48 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 8.3Hz), 7.68-7.71 (2H, m), 7.81-7.84 (1H, m).

5

(12) Ethyl 1-methyl-6-methylsulfonyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41-1.46 (3H, m), 3.11 (3H, s), 4.16 (3H, s), 4.37-4.45 (2H, m), 7.34 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.62-7.70 (2H, m), 7.83 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 8.6 Hz), 8.07 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz).

10

(13) Methyl 4-fluoro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.92 (3H, s), 4.09 (3H, s), 6.77-6.83 (1H, m), 7.16 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.23-7.31 (1H, m), 7.36 (1H, s).

15

(14) Methyl 4-bromo-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.93 (3H, s), 4.08 (3H, s), 7.16-7.26 (1H, m), 7.31-7.35 (3H, m).

20

(15) Methyl 1-(2-naphthylmethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.86 (3H, s), 6.00 (2H, s), 7.14-7.32 (3H, m), 7.37-7.43 (5H, m), 7.66-7.78 (4H, m).

25

(16) Methyl 1-(2-phenylethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.06 (2H, t, J=7.9Hz), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.74-4.80 (2H, m), 7.11-7.33 (9H, m), 7.66-7.69 (1H, m).

30

(17) Methyl 1-(4-bromobenzyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.87 (3H, s), 5.79 (2H, s), 6.92 (2H, dd, J=2.0, 6.6Hz), 7.15-7.23 (1H, m), 7.31-7.38 (5H, m), 7.70-7.74 (1H, m).

35

(18) Methyl 1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.87 (3H, s), 5.93 (2H, s), 7.14-7.41 (5H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.73-7.77 (1H, m), 8.09-8.14 (2H, m).

40

(19) Methyl 1-(3-phenylpropyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 2.06-2.22 (2H, m), 2.69 (2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.60 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 7.05-7.40 (9H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz).

45

(20) Methyl 1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.28 (3H, s), 3.73 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 7.14 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.36 (1H, dd, J=1.3, 6.9Hz), 7.48 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 8.6Hz), 7.66 (1H, dd, J=1.1, 8.3Hz).

50

(21) Methyl 1-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.03 (6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.61 (4H, q, J=7.3Hz), 2.70-2.82 (2H, m), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.58-4.70 (2H, m), 7.14 (1H, ddd, J=1.3, 6.7, 8.6Hz), 7.27 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.34 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.7, 7.1Hz), 7.43 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 8.6Hz), 7.61-7.71 (1H, m).

55

(22) Ethyl 4-chloro-1-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.00 (6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.59 (4H, q, J=7.3Hz), 2.69-2.80 (2H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.56-4.68 (2H, m), 7.14 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.3Hz), 7.18-7.28 (1H, m), 7.29-7.35 (1H, m), 7.37 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz).

## (23) Preparation of methyl 1-[2-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyethyl]-2-indolecarboxylate:

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 2.0 g (11.4 mmol) of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate, 0.55 g (13.7 mmol) of 60% sodium hydroxide, 3.63 g (13.7 mmol) of 2-(2-iodo-ethoxy) tetrahydropyran (prepared from 2-iodoethanol and 3,4-dihydro-2H-pyran) and 50 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus, 2.87 g (83.0%) of methyl 1-[2-(2-tetrahydro-pyranyl)oxyethyl]-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.27-1.75 (6H, m), 3.26-3.54 (2H, m), 3.75 (1H, dt, J=4.6, 10.2Hz), 4.03 (1H, dt, J=4.6, 10.2Hz), 4.47 (1H, t, J=3.0Hz), 4.80 (2H, t, J=3.7Hz), 7.13 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.22-7.38 (2H, m), 7.53 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz).

## (24) Methyl 1-[3-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxypropyl]-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 (23) except that 2-(3-iodopropoxy) tetrahydropyran was used in place of 2-(2-iodoethoxy)tetrahydropyran.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42-1.97 (6H, m), 2.11 (2H, dt, J=5.9, 11.2Hz), 3.33 (1H, dt, J=7.9, 8.3Hz), 3.40-3.55 (1H, m), 3.72-3.88 (2H, m), 3.94 (3H, s), 4.52 (1H, dd, J=3.0, 4.3Hz), 4.69 (2H, dt, J=0.9, 1.7Hz), 7.14 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 7.0, 7.9Hz), 7.27-7.37 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, dd, J=0.9, 8.5Hz), 7.66 (1H, dt, J=1.0, 7.9Hz).

## (25) Synthesis of methyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 5.00 g (28.5 mmol) of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate, 1.26 g (31.4 mmol) of 60% sodium hydroxide, 12.3 g (43.2 mmol) of tert-butyl N-(3-iodopropyl)carbamate (prepared from 3-iodopropyl-amine and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate) and 60 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus, 2.54 g (27%) of methyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.45 (9H, s), 1.90-2.10 (2H, m), 3.00-3.20 (2H, m), 3.91 (3H, s), 4.62 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.98 (1H, br-s), 7.06-7.20 (1H, m), 7.28-7.44 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz).

## (26) Methyl 1-(2-tert-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 (25) except that tert-butyl N-(2-iodopropyl)carbamate was used in place of tert-butyl N-(3-iodopropyl)carbamate.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41 (9H, s), 3.53 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 3.90 (3H, s), 4.68 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 4.60-4.80 (1H, m), 7.15 (1H, ddd, 1H, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.27-7.38 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz).

## (27) Ethyl 1-methyl-4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oymethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 1.53-1.91 (6H, m), 3.50-3.61 (1H, m), 3.84-4.03 (1H, m), 4.09 (3H, s), 4.34-4.42 (2H, m), 4.75 (1H, t, J=3.6Hz), 4.83 (1H, d, J=12.2Hz), 5.08 (1H, d, J=12.2Hz), 7.18 (1H, t, J=4.0Hz), 7.32-7.33 (2H, m), 7.42 (1H, s).

## (28) Ethyl 4-chloro-1-[4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxybutyl]-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 (23) except that 2-(4-iodobutoxy) tetrahydropyran and ethyl 4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate was used in place of 2-(2-iodoethoxy)tetrahydropyran and methyl 2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.41-2.00 (10H, m), 3.32-3.56 (2H, m), 3.68-3.90 (2H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.55 (1H, t, J=4.0Hz), 4.60 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.13 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.6Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.32 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.39 (1H, s).

## (29) Methyl 1-(3,4-isopropylidenedioxybutyl)-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except that 3,4-isopropylidenedioxybutyl iodide was used in place of methyl iodide.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.34 (3H, s), 1.46 (3H, s), 1.90-2.18 (2H, m), 3.52 (1H, dd, J=6.9, 7.9Hz), 3.91 (3H, s), 3.97 (1H, dd, J=5.9, 7.9Hz), 4.01-4.17 (1H, m), 4.58-4.80 (2H, m), 7.15 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.35 (1H, ddd, J=1.3, 6.9, 7.6Hz), 7.47-7.55 (1H, m), 7.63-7.70 (1H, m).

## (30) Methyl-1-[2-{1-(4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]octyl)]ethyl}-2-indolecarboxylate:

The title compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except that 2-{1-(4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]octyl)]ethyl iodide was used in place of methyl iodide.

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 0.79 (3H, s), 2.17 (2H, ddd,  $J=2.6, 5.3, 7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 3.89 (6H, s), 3.90 (3H, s), 5.87 (2H, ddd,  $J=2.3, 5.6, 7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.12 (1H, ddd,  $J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4\text{Hz}$ ), 7.27 (1H, d,  $J=0.7\text{Hz}$ ), 7.32 (1H, ddd,  $J=1.3, 6.9, 7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.48 (1H, dd,  $J=0.7, 8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.65 (1H, ddd,  $J=1.0, 1.5, 8.3\text{Hz}$ ).

The following compounds were prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 5.

## 10     (31) Methyl 4-benzyloxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.89 (3H, s), 4.06 (3H, s), 5.22 (2H, s), 6.57 (1H, d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 6.99 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.22-7.28 (1H, m), 7.30-7.51 (6H, m).

## 15     (32) Methyl 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.89 (3H, s), 4.02 (3H, s), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, d,  $J=2.31\text{Hz}$ ), 6.91 (1H, dd,  $J=2.3, 8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 7.24 (1H, d,  $J=1.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.34-7.44 (3H, m), 7.47-7.52 (2H, m), 7.53-7.57 (1H, m).

## 20     (33) Methyl 7-benzyloxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.89 (3H, s), 4.38 (3H, s), 5.19 (2H, s), 6.78 (1H, d,  $J=8.6\text{Hz}$ ), 6.97-7.03 (1H, m), 7.24-7.27 (2H, m), 7.33-7.51 (5H, m).

25     Reference Example 6Preparation of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate

To 300 ml of a methanol solution of 30.0 g (186.2 mmol) of 2-indolecarboxylic acid was dropwise added 44.3 g (372.3 mmol) of thionyl chloride at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . The reaction mixture was refluxed for 2 hours and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Ice water was poured onto the resulting residue. The mixture was made basic by the addition of concentrated ammonium hydroxide. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure to give 32.34 g (99.2%) of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate.

35       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.95 (3H, s), 7.13-7.45 (4H, m), 7.69 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0, 7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 8.91 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds were prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 6.

## (1) Methyl 3-indolecarboxylate:

40       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.93 (3H, s), 7.24-7.31 (2H, m), 7.38-7.45 (1H, m), 7.93 (1H, d,  $J=3.0\text{Hz}$ ), 8.17-8.22 (1H, m), 8.63 (1H, br-s).

## (2) Methyl 4-fluoro-2-indolecarboxylate:

45       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.96 (3H, s), 6.78-6.85 (1H, m), 7.18-7.30 (3H, m), 8.99 (1H, br-s).

## (3) Methyl 4-bromo-2-indolecarboxylate:

50       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.97 (3H, s), 7.17 (1H, dd,  $J=7.6, 8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.28 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0, 2.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.32-7.39 (2H, m), 9.05 (1H, br-s).

## (4) Methyl 7-benzyloxy-2-indolecarboxylate:

55       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.93 (3H, s), 5.21 (2H, s), 6.80 (1H, d,  $J=6.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.01-7.08 (1H, m), 7.19 (1H, dd,  $J=2.3, 4.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.24-7.31 (1H, m), 7.35-7.51 (5H, m), 9.07 (1H, br-s).

## (5) Methyl 4-benzyloxy-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.93 (3H, s), 5.22 (2H, s), 6.58 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.19-7.26 (1H, m), 7.31-7.44 (4H, m), 7.50 (2H, d, J=7.3Hz), 8.84 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 7Preparation of methyl 5-indolecarboxylate

<sup>10</sup> A mixture of 1.00 g (6.21 mmol) of 5-indole-carboxylic acid and 50 ml of 10% hydrogen chloride/ methanol was refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was then poured onto ice water followed by neutralization with sodium bicarbonate. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 0.42 g (38.6%) of methyl 5-indole-carboxylate.

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.93 (3H, s), 6.64-6.66 (1H, m), 7.26-7.29 (1H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 8.6Hz), 7.91 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 8.6Hz), 8.3-8.6 (2H, m).

Reference Example 8Preparation of methyl 1-isopropyl-5-indolecarboxylate

<sup>20</sup> A mixture of 2.20 g (8.97 mmol) of isopropyl 1-isopropyl-5-indolecarboxylate, 100 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide solution and 100 ml of ethanol was refluxed for an hour. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Thereafter water was added to the residue and the resulting mixture was acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid. The precipitated solid was filtered and dried under reduced pressure to give 2.00 g of crude 1-isopropyl-5-indole-carboxylic acid. The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 4 using 2.00 g of the crude 1-isopropyl-5-indole-carboxylic acid, 0.44 g (11.1 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 2.87 g (20.2 mmol) of methyl iodide and 50 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus, 1.64 g (84.2%; yield based on isopropyl 1-isopropyl-5-indolecarboxylic acid) was obtained.

<sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.54 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 3.93 (3H, s), 4.65-4.75 (1H, m), 6.61 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.37 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.9 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 8.6Hz), 8.39 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz).

Reference Example 9Preparation of 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid

<sup>30</sup> A mixture of 3.40 g (15.2 mmol) of ethyl 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate, 100 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide solution and 100 ml of ethanol was refluxed for an hour. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Thereafter ice water was added to the residue and the resulting mixture was acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid and extracted three times with ethyl acetate. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2.85 g (95.8%) of 7-chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid.

<sup>35</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 7.04-7.09 (1H, m), 7.19 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.30 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.6Hz), 7.62 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 11.9 (1H, br-s), 13.1 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 10Preparation of 1-isopropyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid

<sup>40</sup> The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 4, using 6.00 g (34.2 mmol) of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate, 1.36 g (34.2 mmol) of 60% sodium hydroxide, 6.40 g (37.7 mmol) of isopropyl iodide and 100 ml of dimethylformamide. The mixture of methyl 1-isopropyl-2-indolecarboxylate and isopropyl 1-isopropyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained. The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 9, using the thus obtained mixture, 150 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide solution and 150 ml of ethanol. Thus 3.71 g (53.3%) of 1-isopropyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid was obtained.

<sup>45</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.58 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 5.74-5.85 (1H, m), 7.05-7.11 (1H, m), 7.19-7.28 (2H, m), 7.64-7.72 (2H, m), 12.9 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 11

## Preparation of methyl 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylate

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 7-carbomethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

After 5.00 g (20.2 mmol) of ethyl 7-carbomethoxy-2-indolecarboxylate obtained in a manner similar to Reference Example 1 was added to a suspension of 0.81 g (20.2 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride in 80 ml of dimethylformamide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature. After the mixture became a transparent solution, 5.74 g (40.4 mmol) of methyl iodide was then added dropwise to the transparent solution at room temperature followed by stirring at 50°C for an hour. The reaction solution was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate and the combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 5.20 g (98.5%) of ethyl 7-carbomethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

15

b) Preparation of 1-methylindole-2,7-dicarboxylic acid

A mixture of 5.20 g (19.9 mmol) of ethyl 7-carbomethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 90 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide and 150 ml of ethanol was refluxed for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and ice water was added to the residue. 2N hydrochloric acid was added to acidify the reaction mixture. The precipitated solid was filtered and dried under reduced pressure to give 4.70 g (>99%) of 1-methylindole-2,7-dicarboxylic acid.

20

c) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylic acid

A mixture of 4.60 g (21.0 mmol) of 1-methylindole-2,7-dicarboxylic acid, 0.5 g of copper (II) oxide and 50 ml of quinoline was stirred for an hour with heating at 180°C. After cooling, the reaction mixture was poured onto 200 ml of 2N hydrochloric acid. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate and the combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.82 g (49.0%) of 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylic acid.

30

d) Preparation of methyl 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylate

To 70 ml of a methanol solution of 1.82 g (10.4 mmol) of 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylic acid was added dropwise 3.09 g (26.0 mmol) of thionyl chloride at 0°C. The reaction mixture was refluxed for 2 hours and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. Ice water was poured onto the resulting residue and ammonium hydroxide was added to render the mixture alkaline. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.16 g (59.0%) of methyl 1-methyl-7-indolecarboxylate.

40

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.88 (3H, s), 3.96 (3H, s), 6.54 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.75-7.78 (1H, m).

Reference Example 12

45

## Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate

a) Preparation of 3-benzyloxy-6-chloro-2-nitrotoluene

A mixture of 1.50 g (8.00 mmols) of 4-chloro-3-methyl-2-nitrophenol, 1.50 g (8.80 mmols) of benzyl bromide, 2.43 g (17.6 mmols) of potassium carbonate and 70 ml of acetone was refluxed for 2 hours. Thereafter insoluble matters were filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.22 g (>99%) of 3-benzyloxy-6-chloro-2-nitrotoluene.

55

b) Preparation of ethyl (3-benzyloxy-6-chloro-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate

Diethyl oxalate, 1.20 g (7.92 mmol), was added dropwise to a suspension of 0.67 g (7.92 mmol) of potassium ethoxide in diethyl ether (50 ml) at room temperature. Subsequently 2.00 g (7.20 mmol) of 3-benzyloxy-6-chloro-2-ni-

toluene was added to the mixture followed by stirring for 4 hours at room temperature. The reaction solution was poured onto 1N hydrochloric acid and the mixture was extracted twice with diethyl ether. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 5 1.60 g (53.5%) of ethyl (3-benzyloxy-6-chloro-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate.

c) Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 1.60 g (4.24 mmol) of ethyl (3-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate, 22.9 g (29.7 mmol) of 20% 10 titanium trichloride solution and 60 ml of acetone was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and the mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.50 g (35.8%) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indole-carboxylate.

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 4.40 (2H, dd,  $J=6.9, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.01 (1H, d,  $J=8.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.26-7.27 (1H, m), 7.35-7.48 (5H, m), 9.15 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 13

20 Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate

a) Preparation of ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-chlorophenyl)-2-azidopropenoate

An ethanol solution, 70 ml, containing 5.40 g (21.9 mmol) of 4-benzyloxy-2-chlorobenzaldehyde and 11.3 g (87.6 25 mmol) of ethyl azide acetate was gradually added dropwise to 70 ml of an ethanol solution of 5.95 g (87.6 mmol) of sodium ethoxide at -10°C. After stirring at -10°C for further 5 hours, the reaction temperature was slowly elevated to room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured onto 200 ml of saturated ammonium chloride aqueous solution and the mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with saturated ammonium chloride solution and next with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium 30 sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 4.50 g (57.5%) of ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-chlorophenyl)-2-azidopropenoate.

b) Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate

35 A solution of 4.50 g (12.6 mmols) of ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-chlorophenyl)-2-azidopropenoate in 100 ml of toluene was refluxed for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 3.73 g (89.8%) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate.

16  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.38-1.43 (3H, m), 4.35-4.43 (2H, m), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.79 (1H, dd,  $J=0.7, 2.0\text{Hz}$ ), 6.95 (1H, d,  $J=2.0\text{Hz}$ ), 7.23-7.24 (1H, m), 7.31-7.45 (5H, m), 8.94 (1H, br-s).

40

Reference Example 14

Preparation of methyl 1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate

45 a) Preparation of methyl 1-(2-cyanoethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate

After 3.63 g (68.4 mmol) of acrylonitrile and 2.2 ml of 40% methanol solution of N-benzytrimethylammonium hydroxide was added to a solution of 10.0 g (57.1 mmol) of methyl 2-indolecarboxylate in 150 ml of 1,4-dioxane, the mixture was stirred at 55°C for an hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was added to a mixture of 5 ml of acetic acid and 500 ml of water. The aqueous layer was extracted twice with methylene chloride and the combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 13.0 g of methyl 1-(2-cyano-ethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate.

55

b) Preparation of methyl 1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 3.12 g (13.7 mmol) of methyl 1-(2-cyanoethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate, 30 ml of 10% sodium carbonate solution, 30 ml of 30% hydrogen peroxide and 100 ml of acetone was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. Next,

the reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and 10% sodium sulfite solution was added dropwise to decompose an excess of the peroxide. The most of acetone in the reaction mixture was then distilled off and the concentrate was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.30 g (68%) of methyl 1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 2.75 (2H, ddd, J=1.7, 5.9, 7.6Hz), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.85 (2H, ddd, J=1.7, 5.9, 7.6Hz), 5.37 (1H, br-s), 5.72 (1H, br-s), 7.16 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.32 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.37 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 7.3, 7.8Hz), 7.53 (1H, dd, J=0.8, 8.4Hz), 7.67 (1H, dt, J=1.0, 7.9Hz).

<sup>10</sup> The following compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 14.

(1) Ethyl 1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.43 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.65-2.82 (1H, m), 4.39 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.84 (2H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.3, 7.3Hz), 5.45 (1H, br-s), 5.68 (1H, br-s), 7.14 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.26 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 8.2Hz), 7.41 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz).

Reference Example 15

<sup>20</sup> Preparation of methyl 7-carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

a) Preparation of methyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

<sup>25</sup> In a solvent mixture of 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 50 ml of methanol was dissolved 2.31 g (7.82 mmol) of methyl 7-benzyloxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. After 0.5 g of 10% palladium/carbon was added to the solution, catalytic hydrogenation was performed at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.63 g (>99%) of methyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>30</sup> b) Preparation of methyl 7-carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

<sup>35</sup> After 0.50 g (2.44 mmol) of methyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.01 g (2.44 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride in 25 ml of dimethyl-formamide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature until the mixture became a transparent solution. Then 0.25 g (2.68 mmols) of 2-chloroacetamide was added dropwise to the transparent solution at room temperature followed by stirring at 50°C for an hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.54 g (84.4%) of methyl 7-carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>40</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.91 (3H, s), 4.41 (3H, s), 4.67 (2H, s), 5.70 (1H, br-s), 6.41 (1H, br-s), 6.70-6.73 (1H, m), 7.03 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.26 (1H, s), 7.31-7.34 (1H, m).

The following compounds were synthesized in a manner similar to Reference Example 15.

(1) Methyl 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>45</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 3.17-3.22 (2H, m), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.24 (3H, s), 4.31-4.36 (2H, m), 6.68 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 6.94-7.00 (1H, m), 7.18-7.35 (7H, m).

(2) Methyl 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>50</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 2.16-2.26 (2H, m), 2.84-2.90 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.07-4.12 (2H, m), 4.43 (3H, s), 6.64 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 6.97 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.18-7.23 (5H, m), 7.25-7.33 (2H, m).

(3) Ethyl 7-carbamoylmethoxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>55</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.33-1.36 (3H, m), 4.29-4.37 (5H, m), 4.60 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.06 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 8.2Hz), 7.15 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 7.38 (1H, br-s), 7.54 (1H, br-s).

(4) Ethyl 4-chloro-7-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 2.36 (6H, s), 2.82 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.33-4.40 (5H, m), 6.59 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.30 (1H, s).

(5) Ethyl 6-carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>10</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.38-1.43 (3H, m), 4.03 (3H, s), 4.32-4.40 (2H, m), 4.60 (2H, s), 5.61 (1H, br-s), 6.59 (1H, br-s), 6.79 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 6.84 (1H, dd, J=2.3, 8.6Hz), 7.26-7.27 (1H, m), 7.57-7.60 (1H, m).

(6) Ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)-ethoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>15</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 1.79-1.84 (4H, m), 2.63-2.68 (4H, m), 2.97-3.02 (2H, m), 4.20-4.24 (2H, m), 4.33-4.41 (5H, m), 6.60 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.3 Hz), 7.31 (1H, s).

(7) Methyl 7-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.43 (9H, s), 2.09 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 3.35-3.42 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.13-4.18 (2H, m), 4.39 (3H, s), 4.73 (1H, br-s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 6.96-7.02 (1H, m), 7.21-7.26 (2H, m).

(8) Ethyl 7-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.38-1.44 (12H, m), 2.03-2.13 (2H, m), 3.33-3.40 (2H, m), 4.12 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.33-4.41 (5H, m), 4.70 (1H, br-s), 6.58 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.31 (1H, s).

(9) Ethyl 6-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>30</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.37-1.42 (3H, m), 1.45 (9H, s), 2.02 (2H, dd, J=6.3, 12.5Hz), 3.33-3.40 (2H, m), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.10 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.35 (2H, dd, J=6.9, 14.2Hz), 4.78 (1H, br-s), 6.76 (1H, s), 6.78-6.83 (1H, m), 7.24-7.26 (1H, m), 7.53 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz).

(10) Ethyl 7-(2-tert-butoxycarbonylaminooethoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>35</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 1.45 (9H, s), 3.63 (2H, dd, J=5.3, 10.6Hz), 4.13 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 4.30-4.41 (5H, m), 4.63-4.89 (1H, m), 6.58 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.31 (1H, s).

(11) Methyl 1-methyl-7-[2-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyethoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>40</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.52-1.85 (6H, m), 3.50-3.58 (1H, m), 3.83-3.90 (5H, m), 4.11-4.19 (1H, m), 4.26-4.30 (2H, m), 4.42 (3H, s), 4.73-4.75 (1H, m), 6.70-6.73 (1H, m), 7.01 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.22-7.26 (2H, m).

(12) Ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[2-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)-oxyethoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>45</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.52-1.85 (6H, m), 3.51-3.56 (1H, m), 3.81-3.91 (2H, m), 4.10-4.17 (1H, m), 4.23-4.27 (2H, m), 4.33-4.40 (5H, m), 4.72-4.73 (1H, m), 6.61 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.30 (1H, s).

(13) Ethyl 4-chloro-7-(2:3-isopropylidenedioxypropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>50</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.47 (9H, m), 3.91-3.99 (1H, m), 4.06-4.23 (3H, m), 4.33-4.41 (5H, m), 4.51-4.63 (1H, m), 6.60 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.31 (1H, s).

(14) Ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-[4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)-oxybutoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate:

<sup>55</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 1.52-1.85 (8H, m), 1.87-2.04 (2H, m), 3.44-3.55 (2H, m), 3.79-3.91 (2H, m), 4.10 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 4.33-4.41 (5H, m), 4.58-4.61 (1H, m), 6.56 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.30 (1H, s).

Reference Example 16

## Preparation of ethyl 4-carboxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 4-hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

In a solvent mixture of 20 ml of 2N hydrochloric acid and 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran was dissolved 4.00 g (12.6 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)-oxymethyl-2-indolecarboxylate. The solution was stirred at 50°C for an hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium hydrogen-carbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.90 g (99%) of ethyl 4-hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

15 b) Preparation of ethyl 4-carboxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

In 30 ml of acetone was dissolved 0.70 g (3.00 mmols) of ethyl 4-hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. After 3.3 ml of Jones' reagent, which was prepared by dissolving 26.7 g of chromium (VI) oxide in a mixture of 23 ml of conc. sulfuric acid and 40 ml of water and adding water to make the whole volume 100 ml, was added dropwise to the above solution at room temperature, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with chloroform. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium hydrogen-carbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.38 g (51.2%) of ethyl 4-carboxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.34-1.40 (3H, m), 4.08 (3H, s), 4.35 (2H, dd, J=7.3, 14.2Hz), 7.41-7.47 (1H, m), 7.72 (1H, s), 7.82-7.89 (2H, m), 12.7 (0.5H, br-s).

Reference Example 17

## Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

30 a) Preparation of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoic acid

A mixture of 5.00 g (18.9 mmol) of 5-benzyloxy-2-bromotoluene, 0.46 g (18.9 mmol) of metallic magnesium, a catalytic amount of iodine and 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran was refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling to -50°C, carbon dioxide was bubbled into the reaction solution for 30 minutes. The reaction temperature was then elevated to room temperature and stirring was continued at the same temperature for further 2 hours. Next the reaction mixture was poured into 1N hydrochloric acid followed by extraction twice with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.40 g of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoic acid.

40 b) Preparation of methyl 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoate

Using 1.40 g (5.78 mmol) of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoic acid, 1.37 g (11.6 mmol) of thionyl chloride and 50 ml of methanol, the reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 6 to obtain 0.77 g of methyl 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoate.

45 c) Preparation of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzyl alcohol

A suspension of 0.11 g (2.93 mmol) of lithium aluminum hydride in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran was cooled to 0°C. A solution of 0.75 g (2.93 mmol) of methyl 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzoate in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise to the suspension at 0°C. After stirring at 0°C for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was treated in a conventional manner to give 0.66 g of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzyl alcohol.

50 d) Preparation of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzaldehyde

55 A mixture of 0.70 g (3.07 mmol) of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzyl alcohol, 2.67 g (30.7 mmol) of manganese dioxide, 0.5 ml of methanol and 20 ml of chloroform was stirred at room temperature for 11 hours. Then insoluble matters were filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel

column chromatography to give 0.60 g of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzaldehyde.

**e) Preparation of ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-methylphenyl)-2-azidopropenoate**

5 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 13 a) except for using 2.80 g (12.4 mmol) of 4-benzyloxy-2-methylbenzaldehyde, 6.39 g (49.5 mmol) of ethyl azide acetate, 3.37 g (49.5 mmol) of sodium ethoxide and 50 ml of ethanol. Ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-methylphenyl)-2-azidopropenoate was thus obtained in the yield of 3.24 g.

**f) Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

10 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 13 b) except for using 3.22 g of ethyl 3-(4-benzyloxy-2-methylphenyl)-2-azidopropenoate and 100 ml of toluene. Ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 2.66 g.

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.38-1.43 (3H, m), 2.51 (3H, s), 4.38 (2H, dd,  $J=6.9, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 5.09 (2H, s), 6.72 (2H, s), 7.19 (1H, d,  $J=2.3\text{Hz}$ ), 7.29-7.46 (5H, m), 8.71 (1H, br-s)

The following compound was prepared in a manner similar to Reference Example 17.

(1) Ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate:

20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 4.37-4.45 (2H, m), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.05 (1H, s), 7.23-7.24 (1H, m), 7.30 (1H, s), 7.35-7.47 (5H, m), 8.92 (1H, br-s)

**Reference Example 18**

**25 Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

**a) Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

30 After 3.70 g (11.2 mmol) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.45 g (11.2 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride in 70 ml of dimethylformamide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature. After the mixture became an almost transparent solution, a solution of 3.18 g (22.4 mmol) of methyl iodide in 10 ml of dimethylformamide was dropwise added to the transparent solution at room temperature followed by stirring for 5 hours at the same temperature. The reaction solution was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate and the combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 3.72 (96.4%) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

**b) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

40 In 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran was dissolved 2.20 g (6.40 mmol) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. After 0.3 g of 10% palladium/carbon was added to the solution, catalytic hydrogenation was performed at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.50 g (92.4%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

45  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.38-1.44 (3H, m), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.33-4.40 (2H, m), 5.07 (1H, s), 6.67 (1H, t,  $J=0.99\text{Hz}$ ), 6.78 (1H, d,  $J=1.98\text{Hz}$ ), 7.30 (1H, d,  $J=0.99\text{Hz}$ )

**Reference Example 19**

**50 Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

**a) Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

55 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 18 a) except for using 8.00 g (24.3 mmol) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.97 g (24.3 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 10.3 g (72.8 mmol) of methyl iodide and 200 ml of dimethylformamide. Ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 7.71 g (92.4%).

**b) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 18 b) except for using 7.71 g (22.4 mmol) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.50 g of 10% palladium/carbon and 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran. Ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 4.70 g (82.6%).

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.40-1.45 (3H, m), 4.34-4.42 (5H, m), 5.20 (1H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 7.31 (1H, s)</sup>

**Reference Example 20****Preparation of ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate****a) Preparation of 4-bromo-3-methyl-2-nitrophenol**

A mixture of 10.0 g (53.5 mmol) of 4-bromo-3-methylphenol, 50 ml of acetic acid and 10 ml of water was stirred under cooling at 0 to 5°C. To the resulting mixture was dropwise added 3.71 g (58.8 mmol) of 70% nitric acid. After completion of the dropwise addition, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for about an hour. The reaction solution was then poured onto ice water. The mixture was extracted three times with diethyl ether. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to obtain 1.70 g (13.7%) of 4-bromo-3-methyl-2-nitrophenol. b) Preparation of 3-benzyloxy-6-bromo-2-nitrotoluene

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 12 a) except for using 5.11 g (29.9 mmol) of 4-bromo-3-methyl-2-nitrophenol, 6.30 g (27.2 mmol) of benzyl bromide, 8.26 g (59.7 mmol) of potassium carbonate and 150 ml of acetone. 3-Benzyl-6-bromo-2-nitrotoluene was thus obtained in the yield of 5.10 g (58.3%).

**c) Preparation of 3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrotoluene**

A mixture of 1.50 g (4.66 mmol) of 3-benzyloxy-6-bromo-2-nitrotoluene, 6.33 g (46.6 mmol) of sodium trifluoroacetate, 4.43 g (23.3 mmol) of copper (I) iodide and 80 ml of N-methylpyrrolidone was heated at 160°C for 7 hours while stirring. Next, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and ethyl acetate was added to the resulting residue. Insoluble matters were then filtered off. The filtrate was washed twice with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.70 (48.3%) of 3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrotoluene.

**d) Preparation of ethyl (3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 12 b) except for using 14.6 g (46.9 mmol) of 3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrotoluene, 13.7 g (93.8 mmol) of diethyl oxalate, 7.90 g (93.8 mmol) of potassium ethoxide and 300 ml of diethyl ether. Ethyl (3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate was thus obtained in the yield of 10.9 g (56.9%).

**e) Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 12 c) except for using 10.9 g (26.7 mmol) of ethyl (3-benzyloxy-6-trifluoromethyl-2-nitrophenyl)pyruvate, 165 g (213 mmol) of 20% titanium chloride aqueous solution and 100 ml of ethanol. Ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 8.00 g (82.6%).

<sup>45</sup> <sup>1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.40-1.45 (3H, m), 4.38-4.46 (2H, m), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.59Hz), 7.32-7.49 (7H, m), 9.25 (1H, br-s).</sup>

**f) Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 18 a) except for using 8.00 g (22.0 mmol) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.88 g (22.0 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 6.25 g (44.0 mmol) of methyl iodide and 150 ml of dimethylformamide. Ethyl 7-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 7.40 g (89.1%).

g) Preparation of ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 18 b) except for using 6.50 g (17.2 mmol) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.0 g of 10% palladium/carbon and 150 ml of ethanol. Ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 4.95 g (97.0%).

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.45 (3H, m), 4.33-4.41 (2H, m), 6.69 (1H, dd, J=0.66, 7.92Hz), 7.20 (1H, dd, J=0.99, 7.92Hz), 7.31-7.33 (1H, m), 9.69 (1H, br-s).

Reference Example 21

## 10 Preparation of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate

a) Preparation of 3,4-dimethyl-2-nitrophenol

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 20 a) except for using 15.7 g (129 mmol) of 3,4-dimethylphenol, 130 ml of acetic acid, 8 ml of water and 12.2 g (135 mmol) of 70% nitric acid. 3,4-Dimethyl-2-nitrophenol was thus obtained in the yield of 7.01 g (26.0%).

b) Preparation of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 12 a) through c) except for using 7.01 g (41.9 mmol) of 3,4-dimethyl-2-nitrophenol as the starting material. Ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 3.68 g.

<sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 2.49 (3H, s) 4.40 (2H, dd, J=7.26, 14.19Hz), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 6.78-6.82 (1H, m), 7.22 (1H, J=2.31Hz), 7.33-7.50 (5H, m), 9.05 (1H, br-s).

c) Preparation of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 19 a) and b) except for using 4.30 g (13.9 mmol) of ethyl 7-benzyloxy-4-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in the yield of 2.95 g.

<sup>30</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.39-1.44 (3H, m), 2.45 (3H, m) 4.33-4.41 (5H, m), 4.76 (1H, s), 6.49 (1H, d, J=7.59Hz), 6.65-6.69 (1H, m), 7.26 (1H, s).

35 Reference Example 22

## Preparation of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyl chloride

a) Preparation of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-benzoic acid

To a mixture of 2.65 g (66.2 mmol) of sodium hydroxide, 50 ml of 1,4-dioxane and 50 ml of water was added 5.00 g (33.1 mmol) of 4-(aminomethyl)benzoic acid. Subsequently, a solution of 10.8 g (49.6 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate in 10 ml of 1,4-dioxane was dropwise added to the mixture. After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and 10% hydrochloric acid was added thereto to render weakly acidic (pH = 5 to 6). The precipitated crystals were taken out by filtration and dried under reduced pressure to give 7.90 g (95.1%) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzoic acid.

b) Preparation of methyl 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzoate

A mixture of 16.2 g (64.5 mmol) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzoic acid, 13.6 g (70.9 mmol) of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride, 1.00 g of 4-dimethylaminopyridine and 200 ml of methanol was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. Methanol was distilled off under reduced pressure and ice water was poured to the residue thus obtained. The mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed with 10% citric acid aqueous solution and then with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and finally with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 14.3 g (83.6%) of methyl 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-benzoate.

c) Preparation of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-benzyl alcohol

A suspension of 1.40 g (36.8 mmol) of lithium aluminum hydride in 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred at 0°C. A solution of 13.0 g (49.0 mmol) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzoate in 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran was dropwise added slowly to the suspension. After completion of the dropwise addition, the solution was heated to reflux for 2 hours and then cooled to 0°C. After 20 ml of 50% tetrahydrofuran was dropwise added to the reaction mixture, 100 ml of ethyl acetate was added thereto. Insoluble matters were filtered off and the resulting filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The concentrate was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to obtain 8.80 g (75.7%) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyl alcohol.

d) Preparation of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-benzyl chloride

A mixture of 8.80 g (37.1 mmol) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyl alcohol, 120 ml of carbon tetrachloride and 50 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at room temperature. After 12.2 g (44.5 mmol) of triphenylphosphine was added to the solution portionwise, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure and ice water was poured to the resulting concentrate. The mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and then with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 7.50 g (79.1%) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyl chloride.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.46 (9H, s), 4.31 (2H, d, J=5.94Hz), 4.57 (2H, s), 4.85 (1H, br-s), 7.27 (2H, d, J=7.26Hz), 7.35 (2H, d, J=7.25).

Example 1Preparation of 1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

After 8.58 g (89.8 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride was added to 70 ml of a methanol solution of 4.85 g (89.8 mmol) of sodium methoxide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature. The precipitated sodium chloride was filtered off to obtain the solution. Then 1.70 g (8.97 mmol) of methyl 1-methyl-2-indole-carboxylate was added to the thus obtained solution. Subsequently methanol was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was heated at 130°C for 5 minutes and then allowed to stand at room temperature for an hour. Thereafter water was poured onto the reaction solution and the mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give the desired 1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine. The compound was dissolved in chloroform and treated with hydrogen chloride/ether. Thus 0.70 g (30.8%) of 1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 250°C or higher

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 7.12-7.21 (1H, m), 7.31-7.44 (1H, m), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 2Preparation of 1-methyl-5-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.00 g (5.29 mmol) of methyl 1-methyl-5-indolecarboxylate, 5.05 g (52.9 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.85 g (52.9 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 0.92 g (68.9%) of 1-methyl-5-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 260°C or higher

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.86 (3H, s), 6.62-6.64 (1H, m), 7.50 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.91-7.95 (1H, m), 8.44 (2H, br-s), 8.47 (1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

Example 3Preparation of 1-methyl-3-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.00 g (5.29 mmol) of methyl 1-methyl-3-indolecarboxylate, 5.05 g (52.9 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.85

g (52.9 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 0.48 g (35.9%) of 1-methyl-3-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 252-253°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.91 (3H, s), 7.25-7.37 (2H, m), 7.58-7.61 (1H, m), 8.15 (1H, dd, J=1.3, 6.6Hz), 8.3 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 8.78 (1H, s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

5

#### Example 4

##### Preparation of 1-methyl-4-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

10 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 0.85 g (4.49 mmol) of methyl 1-methyl-4-indolecarboxylate, 4.29 g (44.9 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.43 g (44.9 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 0.75 g (66.1%) of 1-methyl-4-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 186-187°C.

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.88 (3H, s), 6.97 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.92-7.35 (1H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

#### Example 5

##### Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

20 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 2.00 g (8.94 mmol) of methyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 8.54 g (89.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 4.83 g (89.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 1.06 g (41.3%) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

25 M.P.: 288-290°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.05 (3H, s), 7.24 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.35-7.41 (1H, m), 7.62 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.98 (1H, s), 8.56 (2H, br-s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

The compounds of Examples 6 through 81 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 1.

30 Example 6

##### 5-Chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 43.6%, M.P.: 281-282°C

35 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.03 (3H, s), 7.39 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.77 (1H, s), 7.81 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

#### Example 7

##### 6-Chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 59.6%, M.P.: 290-294°C

40 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.02 (3H, s), 7.17 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.6Hz), 7.74-7.77 (2H, m), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

#### Example 8

##### 7-Chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 56.5%, M.P.: 243-244°C

45 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.33 (3H, s), 7.11-7.17 (1H, m), 7.41 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.71 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

50

#### Example 9

##### 1,4-Dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 32.5%, M.P.: 279-280°C

55 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.53 (3H, s), 4.02 (3H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.26-7.32 (1H, m), 7.41 (1H, d, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 10**1,5-Dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 30.5%, M.P.: 281-282°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.41 (3H, s), 4.00 (3H, s), 7.23 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.48-7.51 (2H, m), 7.79 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 11**1,6-Dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 63.1%, M.P.: 267-269°C

10      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.47 (3H, s), 3.99 (3H, s), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.41 (1H, s), 7.61-8.00 (2H, m), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 11.6 (1H, br-s).

Example 12**1,7-Dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 27.3%, M.P.: 271-273°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.78 (3H, s), 4.25 (3H, s), 6.99-7.11 (2H, m), 7.53 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.70 (1H, s), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

Example 13**5-Methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 50.1%, M.P.: 235-236°C

25      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.80 (3H, s), 4.01 (3H, s), 7.03-7.07 (1H, m), 7.16 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.52 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

Example 14**1-Methyl-6-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 62.1%, M.P.: 297-298°C

30      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.94 (3H, s), 6.55 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 3.0Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.67-7.78 (2H, m), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (1H, br-s), 8.9 (2H, br-s), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

35

Example 15**1-Benzyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 54.9%, M.P.: 228-229°C

40      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.86 (2H, s), 7.03 (2H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.17-7.39 (4H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.98 (1H, s), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 16**1-Benzyl-3-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 66.2%, M.P.: 252-253°C

45      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.53 (2H, s), 7.23-7.37 (7H, m), 7.62-7.66 (1H, m), 8.15-8.18 (1H, m), 8.3 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 8.95 (1H, s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

50

Example 17**1-Isopropyl-3-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 49.7%, M.P.: 221-223°C

55      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.51 (6H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.85-4.90 (1H, m), 7.24-7.34 (2H, m), 7.67 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.14-8.17 (1H, m), 8.3 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 9.12 (1H, s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 18

## 2-Indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 61.9%, M.P.: 192-194°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 7.09-7.14 (1H, m), 7.28-7.34 (1H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.71 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 12.06 (1H, br-s), 12.13 (1H, br-s).

Example 19

## 3-Indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 42.2%, M.P.: 287°C

10      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 7.20-7.29 (2H, m), 7.53 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 6.6Hz), 8.12-8.16 (1H, m), 8.3 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 8.83 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 11.8 (1H, br-s), 12.2 (1H, br-s).

Example 20

## 5-Indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 55.9%, M.P.: 219-222°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 6.61-6.63 (1H, m), 7.50-7.56 (2H, m), 7.85-7.89 (1H, m), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.49 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 8.75 (2H, br-s), 11.6 (1H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

Example 21

## 1-Isopropyl-5-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 72.5%, M.P.: 219°C

25      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.48 (6H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.81-4.88 (1H, m), 6.67 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.68-7.71 (2H, m), 7.89-7.93 (1H, m), 8.3-8.6 (3H, m), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

Example 22

## 4-Methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 54.5%, M.P.: 281-282°C

30      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.93 (3H, s), 4.01 (3H, s), 6.62 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.30-7.36 (1H, m), 7.83 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

35

Example 23

## 6-Methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 75.5%, M.P.: 272°C

40      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.87 (3H, s), 4.00 (3H, s), 6.81 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.4 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

Example 24

45     1-Methyl-4-nitro-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 97.7%, M.P.: 292-293°C

46      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.14 (3H, s), 7.59-7.65 (1H, m), 8.16 (1H, m), 8.20-8.28 (2H, m), 8.5 (4H, br-s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

50

Example 25

## 1-Methyl-6-nitro-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 68.4%, M.P.: 279-283°C

55      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.15 (3H, s), 7.89 (1H, s), 7.95-8.03 (2H, m), 8.51-8.66 (5H, m), 12.1 (1H, br-s).

Example 26

## 1-Methyl-7-nitro-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 66.8%, M.P.: 268-270°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.83 (3H, s), 7.36 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.98 (1H, s), 8.06 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.9Hz), 8.19 (1H, dd, J=1.0, 7.9Hz), 8.44-8.74 (4H, m), 12.2 (1H, br-s).

5    Example 27

1-Methyl-5-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 73.6%, M.P.: 294-295°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.09 (3H, s), 7.86-7.91 (2H, m), 8.23 (1H, dd, J=2.3, 9.2Hz), 8.49 (4H, br-s), 8.83 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

10    Example 28

1-Methyl-7-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 37.4%, M.P.: 203-204°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.78 (3H, s), 6.60 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.16 (1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.53 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.85 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.44 (2H, br-s), 8.52 (2H, br-s), 11.90 (1H, br-s).

15    Example 29

1-Methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 57.8%, M.P.: 283-285°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.10 (3H, s), 7.52-7.58 (2H, m), 7.91 (1H, s), 7.98-8.01 (1H, m), 8.4-8.8 (4H, m), 11.99 (1H, br-s).

20    Example 30

5-Fluoro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 60.8%, M.P.: 278-281°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.03 (3H, s), 7.25-7.33 (1H, m), 7.54 (1H, dd, J=2.3, 9.6Hz), 7.69 (1H, dd, J=4.6, 9.2Hz), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.51 (2H, br-s), 8.69 (2H, br-s), 11.98 (1H, br-s).

25    Example 31

5-Ethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 30.9%, M.P.: 234-236°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.35 (3H, t, J=6.9Hz), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.05 (2H, dd, J=6.9, 14.2Hz), 7.05 (1H, dd, J=2.3, 9.2Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=2.3Hz), 7.54 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.73 (1H, s), 8.42 (2H, br-s), 8.65 (2H, br-s), 11.81 (1H, br-s).

30    Example 32

5-Benzylxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 45.2%, M.P.: 249-251°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.99 (3H, s), 5.14 (2H, s), 7.12-7.16 (1H, m), 7.28-7.58 (7H, m), 7.67 (1H, s), 8.28-8.68 (4H, m), 11.71 (1H, br-s).

35    Example 33

1-Methyl-6-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 44.4%, M.P.: 255-257°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.11 (3H, s), 7.44 (1H, dd, J=1.3, 8.6Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.10 (1H, s), 8.48 (2H, br-s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 12.03 (1H, br-s).

40    Example 34

7-Benzylxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 53.5%, M.P.: 221-222°C  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.27 (3H, s), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.97-7.08 (2H, m), 7.27-7.56 (5H, m), 7.72 (1H, s), 8.43 (2H, br-s).

s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 11.80 (1H, br-s).

Example 35

5       1-(2-Naphthylmethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 56.4%, M.P.: 254-255°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 6.02 (2H, s), 7.17-7.27 (2H, m), 7.32-7.38 (1H, m), 7.43-7.48 (3H, m), 7.60 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.73-7.86 (4H, m), 8.07 (1H, s), 8.43 (2H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 12.04 (1H, br-s).

10      Example 36

1-(2-Phenylethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 55.1%, M.P.: 262-264°C

15      1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.97-3.03 (2H, m), 4.73-4.79 (2H, m), 7.13-7.24 (6H, m), 7.32-7.38 (1H, m), 7.59 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.43 (2H, br-s), 8.62 (2H, br-s), 11.78 (1H, br-s).

Example 37

1-(4-Bromobenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

20      Yield: 53.3%, M.P.: 260-263°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.82 (2H, s), 6.99 (2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.17-7.23 (1H, m), 7.35-7.40 (1H, m), 7.47 (2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.06 (1H, s), 8.47 (2H, br-s), 8.69 (2H, br-s), 12.07 (1H, br-s).

Example 38

25

1-(4-Nitrobenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 42.7%, M.P.: 245-247°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.98 (2H, s), 7.20-7.27 (3H, m), 7.39 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.05 (1H, s), 8.16 (2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.41 (2H, br-s), 8.61 (2H, br-s), 12.02 (1H, br-s).

30

Example 39

1-(4-Methoxybenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 54.8%, M.P.: 239-240°C

35

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.68 (3H, s), 5.78 (2H, s), 6.82 (2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.18 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.34-7.40 (1H, m), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.92 (1H, s), 8.43 (2H, br-s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 11.89 (1H, br-s).

Example 40

40

1-(3-Phenylpropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 39.0%, M.P.: 147-148°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.97-2.13 (2H, m), 5.62 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 4.59 (2H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.11-7.34 (6H, m), 7.40 (1H, dt, J=1.0, 8.0Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 8.25-8.70 (4H, m), 11.75 (1H, br-s).

45

Example 41

1-(4-Phenylbutyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 51.0%, M.P.: 154-155°C

50

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.43-1.65 (2H, m), 1.65-1.68 (2H, m), 2.57 (2H, t, J=8.0Hz), 4.58 (1H, t, J=7.0Hz), 7.03-7.32 (6H, m), 7.39 (1H, dt, J=1.0, 8.0Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.92 (1H, s), 8.20-9.00 (4H, m), 11.95 (1H, br-s).

Example 42

55

1-Isopropyl-6-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 37.7%, M.P.: 218-220°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.51 (6H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.92-5.02 (1H, m), 6.59 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.66-7.81 (3H, m), 8.41 (2H, br-s), 8.66 (1H, s), 8.86 (2H, br-s), 12.04 (1H, br-s).

Example 43

1-Benzyl-6-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 44.5%, M.P.: 227-228°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.57 (2H, s), 6.62 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.24-7.32 (5H, m), 7.69-7.79 (2H, m), 7.81 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 8.43 (2H, br-s), 8.71 (1H, s), 8.86 (2H, br-s), 12.06 (1H, br-s).Example 44

10     1-Isopropyl-4-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 49.0%, M.P.: 95-97°C

11      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.48 (6H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.87 (1H, m), 7.01 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.26-7.31 (1H, m), 7.72 (1H, d, J=3.3Hz), 7.91 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.02 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.54 (2H, br-s), 8.83 (2H, br-s), 11.85 (1H, br-s).15     Example 45

1-Benzyl-4-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 42.6%, M.P.: 203-205°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.52 (2H, s), 7.03 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 7.17-7.32 (6H, m), 7.74 (1H, t, J=1.7Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.48 (2H, br-s), 8.77 (2H, br-s), 11.79 (1H, br-s).Example 46

25     4-Benzyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 57.6%, M.P.: 260°C

26      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.01 (3H, s), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.30-7.54 (6H, m), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.40 (4H, br-s), 11.41 (1H, br-s).Example 47

30

1,3-Dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 55.5%, M.P.: 228-229°C

35      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.56 (3H, s), 3.84 (3H, s), 7.12-7.18 (1H, m), 7.34-7.40 (1H, m), 7.53 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.61-8.68 (4H, m), 11.67 (1H, br-s).Example 48

40     1-Methyl-7-phenyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 58.9%, M.P.: 265-267°C

41      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.07 (3H, s), 7.27 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.41-7.75 (7H, m), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.50 (4H, br-s), 11.77 (1H, br-s).Example 49

45

4-Acetyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 45.4%, M.P.: 288-289°C

46      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.71 (3H, s), 4.07 (3H, s), 7.50-7.56 (1H, m), 7.91-7.97 (2H, m), 8.25 (1H, s), 8.53 (4H, br-s), 11.71 (1H, br-s).

50

Example 50

47     6-Benzyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 42.7%, M.P.: 269-270°C

48      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.99 (3H, s), 5.20 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, d, J=10.6Hz), 7.22 (1H, s), 7.35-7.58 (6H, m), 7.62-7.67 (1H, m), 8.4 (4H, br-s), 11.35 (1H, br-s).

Example 51**4-Ethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 69.8%, M.P.: 262-263°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.42 (3H, t, J=6.9Hz), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.19 (2H, q, J=6.9Hz), 6.62 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.28-7.34 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.51 (4H, br-s), 11.60 (1H, br-s).

Example 52**1-(2-Carbamoyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 30.0%, M.P.: 285-286°C

10      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.55 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.74 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 6.85 (1H, br-s), 7.17 (1H, t, J=6.9Hz), 7.33 (1H, br-s), 7.39 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 7.3, 7.8Hz), 7.70 (2H, dd, J=8.4, 17.7Hz), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.46 (2H, br-s), 8.64 (2H, br-s), 11.85 (1H, br-s).

15

Example 53**1-Propyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 53.2%, M.P.: 218-219°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 0.85 (3H, t, J=7.6Hz), 1.66-1.77 (2H, m), 4.51 (2H, dd, J=6.9, 7.6Hz), 7.10-7.23 (1H, m), 7.32-7.45 (1H, m), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.97 (1H, s), 8.52 (2H, br-s), 8.77 (2H, br-s), 12.01 (1H, br-s).

25

Example 54**1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 15.0%, M.P.: 174-176°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.16 (3H, s), 3.63 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 4.72 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.11-7.22 (1H, m), 7.31-7.44 (1H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.72 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.49 (2H, br-s), 8.70 (2H, br-s), 11.96 (1H; br-s).

30

Example 55**4-Fluoro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 53.1%, M.P.: 281-282°C

35      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 6.97 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 10.2Hz), 7.35-7.43 (1H, m), 7.50 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.48-8.60 (4H, m), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

40

Example 56**4-Bromo-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 58.2%, M.P.: 306-307°C

40      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 7.30-7.36 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.78 (1H, s), 8.56 (4H br-s), 11.91 (1H, br-s).

45

Example 57**4-Isobutoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 58.1%, M.P.: 245-247°C

50      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.05 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 2.06-2.16 (1H, m), 3.90 (2H, d, J=6.3Hz), 3.99 (3H, s), 6.61 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.28-7.34 (1H, m), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.51 (4H, br-s), 11.65 (1H, br-s).

55

Example 58**4-Isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 62.3% M.P.: 269-270°C

55      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.35 (6H, d, J=5.9Hz), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.75-4.84 (1H, m), 6.65 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.28-7.34 (1H, m), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.53 (4H, br-s), 11.59 (1H, br-s).

Example 59

1-Methyl-7-(2-phenylethoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 24.3%, M.P.: 155-156°C

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.21 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 4.13 s), 4.43 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), (3H, 7.08 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.25-7.44 (6H, m), 7.60 (1H, s), 8.44 (4H, br-s), 11.62 (1H, br-s).

Example 60

<sup>10</sup> 1-Methyl-7-(3-phenylpropoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 46.1%, M.P.: 165-166°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.12-2.17 (2H, m), 2.79-2.85 (2H, m), 4.09-4.13 (2H, m), 4.31 (3H, s), 6.83 (1H, m), 7.00-7.05 (1H, m), 7.19-7.32 (6H, m), 7.67 (1H, s), 8.56 (4H, br-s), 11.75 (1H, br-s).

<sup>15</sup> Example 61

7-Benzylxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 54.4%, M.P.: 264°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.27 (3H, s), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.11 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.32-7.54 (5H, m), 7.78 (1H, s), 8.5-8.6 (4H, m), 11.94 (1H, br-s).

Example 62

4-Carboxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

<sup>25</sup> Yield: 40.5%, M.P.: 302-303°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.07 (3H, s), 7.48-7.54 (1H, m), 7.86-7.95 (2H, m), 8.10 (1H, s), 8.3-8.7 (4H, m), 11.58 (1H, br-s), 13.0 (0.7H, br-s).

Example 63

<sup>30</sup> 7-Carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 56.7%, M.P.: 268-269°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.32 (3H, s), 4.61 (2H, s), 6.76 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.03 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.30 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.40 (1H, br-s), 7.58 (1H, br-s), 7.68 (1H, s), 8.54 (4H, m), 11.74 (1H, br-s).

<sup>35</sup> Example 64

7-Carbamoylmethoxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 29.7%, M.P.: 270-271°C

<sup>40</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.33 (3H, s), 4.61 (2H, s), 6.73 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.39 (1H, br-s), 7.58 (1H, br-s), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.57 (4H, br-s), 11.93 (1H, br-s).

Example 65

<sup>45</sup> 4-Chloro-7-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 50.8%, M.P.: 287-288°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.86 (6H, d, J=5.0Hz), 3.62-3.64 (2H, m), 4.29 (3H, s), 4.51-4.55 (2H, m), 6.92 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.6-8.9 (4H, m), 11.01 (1H, br-s), 12.13 (1H, br-s).

<sup>50</sup> Example 66

6-Carbamoylmethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 26.8%, M.P.: 275°C

<sup>55</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.98 (3H, s), 4.53 (2H, s), 6.90-6.95 (1H, m), 7.11 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.45 (1H, br-s), 7.58 (1H, br-s), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.38-8.58 (4H, m), 11.72 (1H, br-s).

Example 67

1-Methyl-6-(2-phenylethoxy)-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 48.6%, M.P.: 219-221°C

5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.07-3.12 (2H, m), 3.97 (3H, s), 4.29 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 6.79-6.83 (1H, m), 7.11 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.23-7.39 (5H, m), 7.80 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.36-8.56 (4H, m), 11.67 (1H, br-s).

Example 68

10 1-Methyl-6-(3-phenylpropoxy)-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 72.4%, M.P.: 232-233°C

1  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.02-2.13 (2H, m), 2.75-2.81 (2H, m), 3.97 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 6.82-6.86 (1H, m), 7.06 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 7.16-7.33 (5H, m), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.36-8.58 (4H, m), 11.69 (1H, br-s).

15 Example 69

1-Methyl-6-methylsulfonyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 30.7%, M.P.: 303-304°C

20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.25 (3H, s), 4.12 (3H, s), 7.65 (1H, dd, J=1.3, 8.6Hz), 7.97-8.00 (2H, m), 8.24 (1H, s), 8.57 (2H, br-s), 8.74 (2H, br-s), 12.23 (1H, br-s).

Example 70

1-Methyl-4-methylsulfonyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 19.4%, M.P.: 313-314°C

25  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.30 (3H, s), 4.10 (3H, s), 7.60 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 8.3Hz), 7.72-7.75 (1H, m), 8.04-8.07 (2H, m), 8.63 (4H, br-s), 12.29 (1H, br-s).

Example 71

30

4-Chloro-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 27.0%, M.P.: 147-150°C

35  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.15 (3H, s), 3.63 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 4.73 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.31-7.44 (1H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.94 (1H, s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 12.05 (1H, br-s).

Example 72

1-(2-carbamoylethyl)-4-chloro-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 11.0%, M.P.: 295°C

40  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.56 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 4.76 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 6.84 (1H, br-s), 7.26 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.30-7.46 (2H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.56 (2H, br-s), 8.62 (2H, br-s), 11.95 (1H, br-s).

Example 73

45

4-Chloro-1-methyl-7-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 53.8%, M.P.: 250°C

1  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.93-2.03 (4H, m), 3.0-3.2 (2H, m), 3.61-3.71 (4H, m), 4.30 (3H, s), 4.51-4.54 (2H, m), 6.92 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.6-8.7 (4H, m), 11.20 (1H, br-s), 12.07 (1H, br-s).

50

Example 74

4-Chloro-7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 35.4%, M.P.: 250°C

55  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.24-2.30 (2H, m), 2.78 (6H, s), 3.2-3.3 (2H, m), 4.20 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.29 (3H, s), 6.85 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.11 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.5-8.7 (4H, m), 10.74 (1H, br-s), 12.04 (1H, br-s).

Example 75

7-[2-(N-Benzyl-N-methylamino)ethoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:  
Yield: 43.5%, M.P.: 230°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.80 (3H, s), 3.61 (2H, br-s), 4.20 (3H, s), 4.40-4.57 (4H, m), 6.89 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.13 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.45-7.47 (3H, m), 7.6-7.7 (2H, m), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.5-8.7 (4H, m), 11.10 (1H, br-s), 12.04 (1H, br-s).

Example 76

10     4-Isopropenyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:  
Yield: 41.5%, M.P.: 235°C

1       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.24 (3H, s), 4.03 (3H, s), 5.35-5.36 (1H, m), 5.48 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.15 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 7.3Hz), 7.38 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 8.6Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.07 (1H, s), 8.45-8.70 (4H, m), 12.03 (1H, br-s).

15     Example 77

4-Isopropenyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:  
Yield: 75.6%, M.P.: 255°C

20      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.35 (6H, d, J=6.9Hz), 3.27-3.37 (1H, m), 4.02 (3H, s), 7.03 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.31-7.37 (1H, m), 7.44 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.08 (1H, s), 8.42-8.70 (4H, m), 11.97 (1H, br-s).

Example 78

1-(2-Diethylaminoethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:  
Yield: 19.3%, M.P.: 250°C

25      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.28 (6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 3.10-3.43 (6H, m), 4.88-5.10 (2H, m), 7.23 (1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.46 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 8.3, 8.7Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.94 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz), 8.09 (1H, br-s), 8.61 (2H, br-s), 8.79 (2H, br-s), 11.27 (1H, br-s), 12.3 (1H, br-s).

30     Example 79

4-Chloro-1-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:  
Yield: 36.0%, M.P.: 260-261°C

35      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.28 (6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 3.10-3.48 (6H, m), 4.90-5.15 (2H, m), 7.31 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.45 (1H, dd, J=7.7, 8.3Hz), 7.98 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.14 (1H, br-s), 8.72 (2H, br-s), 8.75 (2H, br-s), 11.38 (1H, br-s), 12.33 (1H, br-s).

Example 80

40     1-(2-Dimethylaminoethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:  
Yield: 27.0%, M.P.: 239-242°C

1       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.84 (6H, s), 3.23-3.53 (2H, m), 4.85-5.08 (2H, m), 7.23 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 7.9Hz), 7.41-7.43 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.88 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.11 (1H, s), 8.64 (2H, br-s), 8.81 (2H, br-s), 11.09 (1H, br-s), 12.26 (1H, br-s).

45     Example 81

4-Chloro-1-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:  
Yield: 26.0%, M.P.: 245-248°C

50      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.84 (6H, s), 3.31-3.52 (2H, m), 4.88-5.08 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 8.3Hz), 7.91 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.16 (1H, s), 8.71 (2H, br-s), 8.77 (2H, br-s), 11.19 (1H, m), 12.32 (1H, br-s).

Example 82

55     Preparation of 1-benzyl-5-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

After 2.24 g (23.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride was added to 50 ml of a methanol solution of 1.26 g (23.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide, 0.80 g (2.34 mmol) of benzyl 1-benzyl-5-indolecarboxylate was added to the resulting

mixture. The mixture was then stirred for 30 hours while heating at 50 to 60°C. Methanol was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography followed by treatment with 2N hydrochloric acid to give 0.08 g (10.4%) of 1-benzyl-5-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 216-222°C

<sup>6</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.51 (2H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 7.20-7.34 (5H, m), 7.62-7.68 (2H, m), 7.88 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 8.9Hz), 8.43-8.48 (3H, m), 8.72 (2H, br-s), 11.7 (1H, br-s).

### Example 83

#### 10 Preparation of 7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

a) The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 1-a except for using 24.6 g (0.20 mmol) of 2-methoxyaniline, 15.2 g (0.22 mol) of sodium nitrite, 84 ml of conc. hydrochloric acid, 28.8 g (0.20 mmol) of ethyl 2-methylacetacetate and 20 ml of ethanol. Crude ethyl 2-(2-methoxyphenylhydrazone)-propionate was obtained in an amount of 23.0 g.

b) After 23.0 g of the crude ethyl 2-(2-methoxyphenylhydrazone)propionate obtained above was added to 150 ml of 10% hydrogen chloride/ethanol, the mixture was refluxed for 30 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and the mixture was extracted three times with ether. After washing with water and then with aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was roughly purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 8.00 g of crude ethyl 7-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate.

c) The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 8.00 g (36.5 mmol) of the crude ethyl 7-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate obtained above, 1.44 g (36 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 7.76 g (54.7 mmol) of methyl iodide and 50 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus 4.4 g of crude ethyl 7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

d) The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 4.40 g (18.9 mmol) of the crude ethyl 7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate obtained above, 18.0 g (189 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 150 ml of a methanol solution of 10.2 g (189 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 1.58 g of 7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained;

<sup>30</sup> yield: 5.6%, based on 2-methoxyaniline.  
M.P.: 252-253°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.93 (3H, s), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.05 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.8 (1H, br-s).

### Example 84

#### Preparation of 1-isopropyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

<sup>40</sup> A tetrahydrofuran solution, 60 ml, containing 2.00 g (9.84 mmol) of 1-isopropyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid and 2.39 g (14.8 mmol) of carbonyldiimidazole was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then at 45 to 50°C for an hour. After cooling to room temperature, 30 ml of a dimethylformamide solution of 5.64 g (59.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 5.97 g (59.0 mmol) of triethylamine was added to the reaction mixture followed by stirring at room temperature for 12 hours. The mixture was then distilled off under reduced pressure and water was added to the resulting residue. After adjusting pH in the range of 5 to 6 with 2N hydrochloric acid, the mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the extract was acidified with hydrogen chloride/ether. The precipitated crystals were filtered and dried to give 1.31 g (47.4%) of the desired 1-isopropyl-2-indoloyl-guanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 150-151°C

<sup>50</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.61 (6H, d, J=7.3Hz), 5.46-5.57 (1H, m), 7.15 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.32-7.38 (1H, m), 7.68-7.78 (3H, m), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 11.8-11.9 (1H, m).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 84 to obtain the compound of Example 85.

### Example 85

<sup>55</sup> 1-Carbamoylmethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 2.1%, M.P.: 261-262°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.17 (2H, s), 7.10-7.28 (2H, m), 7.32-7.45 (1H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.59 (1H, br-s),

7.75 (1H, dd, J=0.7, 7.0Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.61 (2H, br-s), 11.90 (1H, br-s).

Example 86

5 Preparation of 5-chloro-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 84 except for using 2.00 g (10.2 mmol) of 5-chloro-2-indolecarboxylic acid, 1.82 g (11.3 mmol) of carbonyldiimidazole, 5.86 g (61.3 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride, 6.20 g (61.3 mmol) of triethylamine, 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 50 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus 1.85 g (66.2%) of 10 5-chloro-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 250°C or higher

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 7.32 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.82 (2H, s), 8.53 (2H, br-s), 8.68 (2H, br-s), 12.2 (1H, br-s), 12.3 (1H, br-s).

15 Example 87

Preparation of 6-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

After 1.10 g (4.21 mmol) of 1-methyl-6-nitro-2-indoloylguanidine was dissolved in a solvent mixture of 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 100 ml of methanol, 0.50 g of 10% palladium/carbon was added to the solution at room temperature in a nitrogen flow, while stirring. Catalytic hydrogenation was then performed at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was then concentrated under reduced pressure. Hydrogen chloride/methanol was added to the resulting residue to convert the compound into the hydrochloride, whereby 0.73 g (64.7%) of 6-amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

25 M.P.: 282-283°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00 (3H, s), 7.06 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 8.6Hz), 7.39 (1H, s), 7.76 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.93 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 9.0-10.3 (2H, br), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 87 to prepare the compounds of Examples 88 through 90 shown below.

30

Example 88

4-Amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: >99%, M.P.: 279-283°C

35

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00 (3H, s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.20-7.31 (2H, m), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 11.9 (1H, br-s).

Example 89

40

5-Amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 89.8%, M.P.: 301-302°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 7.35-7.39 (1H, m), 7.72-7.79 (2H, m), 7.93 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.7 (2H, br-s), 10.1 (2H, br-s), 12.1 (1H, br).

45

Example 90

7-Amino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 66.7%, M.P.: 299-300°C

50

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.28 (3H, s), 7.08-7.14 (1H, m), 7.24 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.55 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.5 (2H, br-s), 8.6 (2H, br-s), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

Example 91

Preparation of 5-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

55

In 50 ml of methanol was dissolved 0.83 g (2.58 mmol) of 5-benzyloxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine obtained in Example 32. While stirring at room temperature, 0.30 g of 10% palladium/carbon was added to the solution in a nitrogen flow and catalytic hydrogenation was then conducted at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion

of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 5-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine. The 5-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine was further treated with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 0.37 g (68.6%) of 5-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

5 M.P.: 288-289°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.96 (3H, s), 6.93-6.98 (2H, m), 7.43-7.47 (1H, m), 7.65 (1H, s), 8.43 (2H, br-s), 8.65 (2H, br-s), 9.18 (1H, s), 11.76 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 91 to prepare the compounds of Examples 92 through 96 shown below.

10

#### Example 92

7-Hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 53.0%, M.P.: 244-246°C

15

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.29 (3H, s), 6.71 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 6.88-6.94 (1H, m), 7.12 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.65 (1H, s), 8.42-8.56 (4H, m), 10.08 (1H, s), 11.70 (1H, br-s).

#### Example 93

20

4-Hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 27.4%, M.P.: 267-268°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.96 (3H, s), 6.50 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.16-7.22 (1H, m), 7.71 (1H, s), 8.42 (4H, br-s), 10.14 (1H, br-s), 11.51 (1H, br-s).

25

#### Example 94

6-Hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 73.4%, M.P.: 270-271°C

30

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.90 (3H, s), 6.72-6.76 (1H, m), 6.81 (1H, s), 7.53-7.61 (2H, m), 8.4 (4H, br-s), 9.76 (1H, br-s), 11.39 (1H, br-s).

#### Example 95

4-Chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

35

Yield: 23.9%, M.P.: 280°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.30 (3H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.68 (1H, s), 8.54 (4H, br-s), 10.37 (1H, s), 11.79 (1H, br-s).

40

#### Example 96

4-Chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 40.1%, M.P.: 270°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.91 (3H, s), 6.83-6.84 (2H, m), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.3-8.7 (4H, m), 10.14 (1H, s), 11.72 (1H, br-s).

45

#### Example 97

Preparation of 4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

50

#### a) Preparation of ethyl 4-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

55

In a solvent mixture of 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 50 ml of methanol was dissolved 1.37 g (5.52 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-4-nitro-2-indolecarboxylate. Thereafter 0.30 g of 10% palladium/carbon was added to the solution and catalytic hydrogenation was then conducted at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.2 g (>99%) of ethyl 4-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

**b) Preparation of ethyl-4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate**

In 20 ml of pyridine was dissolved 1.2 g (5.52 mmol) of ethyl 4-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. While stirring at room temperature, 10 ml of anhydrous acetic acid was added to the solution. After stirring for 2 hours at room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and then with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.40 g (97.9%) of ethyl 4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

**c) Preparation of 4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.40 g (5.38 mmol) of ethyl 4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indole-carboxylate, 5.14 g (53.8 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.91 g (53.8 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 1.15 g (69.0%) of 4-acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 277-279°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.15 (3H, s), 3.99 (3H, s), 7.30-7.35 (2H, m), 7.5-7.6 (1H, m), 7.79 (1H, s), 8.4-8.7 (4H, m), 10.00 (1H, br-s), 11.68 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 97 to prepare the compounds of Examples 98 through 100 shown below.

**Example 98****5-Acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 49.2%, M.P.: 260-261°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.06 (3H, s), 3.99 (3H, s), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.83 (1H, s), 8.09 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 8.47 (2H, br-s), 8.71 (2H, br-s), 9.97 (1H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

**Example 99****7-Acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 17.1%, M.P.: 285°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.10 (3H, s), 4.07 (3H, s), 7.07-7.15 (2H, m), 7.61-7.64 (1H, m), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 9.90 (1H, br-s), 11.86 (1H, br-s).

**Example 100****6-Acetamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:**

Yield: 63.8%, M.P.: 280-281°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.09 (3H, s), 3.95 (3H, s), 7.18 (1H, dd, J=1.7, 8.6Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.72 (1H, s), 8.09 (1H, s), 8.2-8.8 (4H, m), 10.17 (1H, br-s), 11.75 (1H, br-s).

**Example 101****Preparation of 1-hydroxy-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride****a) Preparation of methyl 1-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 6 except for using 3.99 g (22.5 mmol) of 1-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylic acid, 5.36 g (45.0 mmol) of thionyl chloride and 100 ml of methanol. Thus 2.56 g (59.5%) of methyl 1-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

**b) Preparation of 1-hydroxy-2-indoloylguanidine**

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.00 g (5.23 mmol) of methyl 1-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate, 5.00 g (52.3 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.82 g (52.3 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 1-Hydroxy-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 0.56 g (42.0%).

M.P.: 217°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 7.13-7.19 (1H, m), 7.37-7.52 (2H, m), 7.69-7.73 (1H, m), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.70 (2H, br-s), 11.4-11.8 (2H, m).

5    Example 102

Preparation of 1-methoxy-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

a) Preparation of methyl 1-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate

In a nitrogen flow 0.56 g (2.93 mmol) of methyl 1-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.12 g (2.93 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride in 20 ml of tetrahydrofuran at room temperature. After it was confirmed that the reaction mixture became transparent, 0.83 g (5.86 mmol) of methyl iodide was added to the reaction mixture. The mixture was then refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water followed by extraction three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.46 g (76.5%) of methyl 1-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 1-methoxy-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 0.46 g (2.24 mmol) of methyl 1-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate, 2.14 g (22.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 15 ml of a methanol solution of 1.21 g (22.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 0.15 g (24.9%) of 1-methoxy-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 214°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.16 (3H, s), 7.21-7.26 (1H, m), 7.44-7.50 (1H, m), 7.62 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.74-7.79 (2H, m), 8.48 (2H, br-s), 8.66 (2H, br-s), 11.93 (1H, br-s).

50    Example 103

Preparation of 5-benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 5-benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

In 20 ml of pyridine was dissolved 0.80 g (3.67 mmol) of ethyl 5-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. While stirring at room temperature, 0.57 g (4.03 mmol) of benzoyl chloride was added to the solution. After stirring for 2 hours at 70°C, the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and then poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and then with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.62 g (52.5%) of ethyl 5-benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 5-benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 0.62 g (1.92 mmol) of ethyl 5-benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 3.68 g (38.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.08 g (38.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 5-Benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 0.38 g (53.1%).

M.P.: 185-190°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.03 (3H, s), 7.50-7.60 (4H, m), 7.63-7.74 (1H, m), 7.81 (1H, s), 7.96-8.00 (2H, m), 8.25 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 8.44 (2H, br-s), 8.62 (2H, br-s), 10.26 (1H, br-s), 11.82 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 103 to prepare the compounds of Examples 104 through 106 shown below.

55    Example 104

4-Benzamido-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 54.7%, M.P.: 302-303°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 7.37-7.64 (6H, m), 7.87 (1H, s), 8.05-8.09 (2H, m), 8.52 (4H, br-s), 10.35 (1H, br-s), 11.70 (1H, br-s).

5    Example 105

7-Benzamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 45.7%, M.P.: 318-319°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.07 (3H, s), 7.16-7.24 (2H, m), 7.53-7.72 (4H, m), 7.80 (1H, m), 8.04-8.06 (2H, m), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.61 (2H, br-s), 10.44 (1H, br-s), 11.88 (1H, br-s).

Example 106

6-Benzamido-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

15    Yield: 40.1%, M.P.: 309°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00 (3H, s), 7.48-7.62 (4H, m), 7.70-7.75 (2H, m), 7.98-8.01 (2H, m), 8.27 (1H, s), 8.2-8.8 (4H, m), 10.45 (1H, br-s), 11.73 (1H, br-s).

Example 107

Preparation of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 87 except for using 0.45 g (1.20 mmol) of 1-(4-nitrobenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine, 0.50 g of 10% palladium/carbon, 25 ml of tetrahydrofuran and 25 ml of methanol. Thus 25 0.33 g (79.7%) of 1-(4-aminobenzyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 226-228°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 5.83 (2H, s), 7.00-7.13 (4H, m), 7.17-7.23 (1H, m), 7.34-7.40 (1H, m), 7.58 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.02 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.66 (2H, br-s), 9.0-9.8 (2H, m), 12.01 (1H, br-s).

30    Example 108

Preparation of 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.00 g (3.30 mmol) of methyl 1-[2-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxyethyl]-2-indolecarboxylate, 3.15 g (33.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and a methanol solution of 1.78 g (33.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 1-[2-(2-Tetrahydropyranyl)-oxyethyl]-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained in an amount of 0.85 g. Thereafter 0.69 g of the thus obtained compound was dissolved in hydrochloric acid/methanol. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 5.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and a solvent mixture of methanol and diethyl ether was added to the resulting residue. The precipitates formed were filtered and dried under reduced pressure to give 0.49 g (65%) of 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 190-193°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.60-3.82 (2H, m), 4.60 (2H, t, J=5.0Hz), 4.74-4.97 (1H, br-s), 7.17 (1H, dt, J=7.0, 7.8Hz), 7.38 (1H, dt, J=7.0, 7.8Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.72 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.20-8.90 (4H, m), 11.87 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 108 to prepare the compounds of Examples 109 and 110 shown below.

50    Example 109

1-(3-Hydroxypropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 81.0%, M.P.: 206-207°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.90 (2H, dt, J=6.9, 7.3Hz), 3.39 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 4.60 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 7.18 (1H, dd, J=7.0, 7.8Hz), 7.41 (1H, dd, J=7.1, 8.5Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.74 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.28-8.85 (4H, m), 11.87 (1H, br-s).

Example 110

1-(4-Hydroxybutyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 84.0%, M.P.: 226°C

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.30-1.50 (2H, m), 1.62-1.86 (2H, m), 3.38 (2H, t, J=6.4Hz), 4.43 (1H, br-s), 4.56 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.17 (1H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.40 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.96 (1H, s), 8.52 (2H, br-s), 8.76 (2H, br-s), 12.00 (1H, s).

Example 111

<sup>10</sup> Preparation of 3-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine

a) Preparation of ethyl 2-phenylhydrazonebutyronate

<sup>15</sup> Ethyl 2-Phenylhydrazonebutyronate was obtained in a manner similar to Reference Example 1 a) except that aniline and ethyl 2-ethylacetacetate were used in place of o-chloroaniline and ethyl 2-methylacetacetate.

b) Preparation of ethyl 3-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

<sup>20</sup> After 25.0 g of ethyl 2-phenylhydrazonebutyronate was dissolved in 80 ml of hydrochloric acid/methanol, the solution was refluxed for an hour. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted three times with diethyl ether. The combined extracts were washed with water and next with saturated sodium hydrogen-carbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give <sup>25</sup> 14.0 g (69.0%) of ethyl 3-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

c) Preparation of 3-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

<sup>30</sup> The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.50 g (7.38 mmol) of ethyl 3-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 7.05 g (73.8 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 3.99 g (73.8 mmol) of sodium methoxide. Thus 1.61 g (86.3%) of 3-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 285-286°C

<sup>35</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.60 (3H, s), 7.12 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.31-7.44 (2H, m), 7.70 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.46 (4H, br-s), 11.78 (1H, br-s), 11.94 (1H, br-s).

Example 112

Preparation of 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indolecarboxylate

<sup>40</sup> A suspension of 0.20 g (0.92 mmol) of ethyl 7-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.14 g (0.94 mmol) of 3-phenylpropionic acid, 0.11 g (0.94 mmol) of 4-dimethylaminopyridine and 0.19 g (0.94 mmol) of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide in 5 ml of methylene chloride was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction solution was poured onto ice water and the resulting mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and next with 5% sodium hydrogen-carbonate solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give ethyl 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

<sup>45</sup> The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 0.42 g (1.21 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indolecarboxylate, 2.31 g (24.2 mmols) of guanidine hydrochloride and a solution of 1.31 g (24.2 mmols) of sodium methoxide in 30 ml of methanol. 1-Methyl-7-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 0.16 g (34.9%).

M.P.: 279-280°C

<sup>50</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.72 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 2.96 (2H, t, J=7.6Hz), 3.34 (3H, s), 7.03-7.14 (2H, m), 7.20-7.24 (1H, m), 7.29-7.31 (4H, m), 7.62 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.69 (1H, s), 8.53 (4H, m), 9.89 (1H, s), 11.76 (1H, br-s).

The compound of Example 113 was prepared in a manner similar to Example 112.

Example 113

5        1-Methyl-6-(3-phenylpropionamido)-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride:  
         Yield: 34.6%, M.P.: 245-247°C  
          $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.66-2.71 (2H, m), 2.91-2.97 (2H, m), 2.91-2.97 (2H, m), 3.95 (3H, s), 7.16-7.30 (6H, m),  
         7.63-7.71 (2H, m), 8.13 (1H, s), 8.36-8.52 (4H, m), 10.16 (1H, br-s), 11.67 (1H, br-s).

10      Example 114

Preparation of 1-(3-aminopropyl)-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

15      The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.50 g (4.51 mmol) of methyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-2-indolecarboxylate, 4.31 g (45.1 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 60 ml of a methanol solution of 2.44 g (45.1 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 1-(3-tert-Butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 1.57 g. After 1.55 g of the compound was dissolved in hydrochloric acid/methanol, the solution was stirred at 70°C for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was recrystallized from water to give 0.65 g (46.0%) of 1-(3-aminopropyl)-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride.

M.P.: 296-297°C

16       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.05 (2H, ddd, J=7.6, 11.4, 14.5Hz), 2.63-2.86 (2H, m), 4.65 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.19 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.42 (1H, t, J=7.6Hz), 7.74 (2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.83-8.16 (4H, m), 8.27-9.03 (4H, m), 12.00-12.30 (1H, br-s).

17      The compound of Example 115 was prepared in a manner similar to Example 114.

25

Example 115

1-(2-Aminoethyl)-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 54.0%, M.P.: 240°C

20       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.14-3.30 (2H, m), 4.77 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 7.22 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 7.6Hz), 7.45 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 7.6Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.83 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 8.03 (1H, br-s), 8.20 (3H, br-s), 8.58 (2H, br-s), 8.74 (2H, br-s), 12.14 (1H, br-s).

Example 116

35

Preparation of 4-aminomethyl-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

40      The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.40 g (4.21 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-4-tert-butyloxycarbonylaminomethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 4.02 g (42.1 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 60 ml of a methanol solution of 2.27 g (42.1 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 1-Methyl-4-tert-butyloxycarbonylaminomethyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 1.50 g. After the compound was dissolved in 35 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 70 ml of methylene chloride, the solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. Thereafter ice water was poured onto the resulting residue and the aqueous layer was rendered alkaline with 28% aqueous ammonia. The mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was converted with hydrogen chloride/ether into the hydrochloride. Thus 0.58 g (43.2%) of 4-aminomethyl-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 283-284°C

45       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.06 (3H, s), 4.28 (2H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.32 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.43-7.49 (1H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.28 (1H, s), 8.5-8.7 (5H, m), 8.79 (2H, br-s), 12.28 (1H, br-s).

50      The following compounds of Examples 117 to 122 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 116.

Example 117

55

7-(3-Aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 51.8%, M.P.: 287-288°C

56       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.09-2.17 (2H, m), 3.32 (2H, br-s), 4.21 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz),

7.05 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 7.98 (3H, br-s), 8.47-8.67 (4H, m), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 118

5      7-(3-Aminopropoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 41.7%, M.P.: 299-300°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.14-2.19 (2H, m), 3.00-3.02 (2H, m), 4.21-4.26 (2H, m), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.83 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.18 (3H, br-s), 8.6-8.7 (4H, m), 12.12 (1H, br-s).

10     Example 119

6-(3-Aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 61.3%, M.P.: 280-281°C

15     1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.09-2.16 (2H, m), 3.01 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.19-4.24 (2H, m), 6.87 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.15 (1H, s), 7.75 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.95 (1H, s), 8.07 (3H, br-s), 8.51-8.80 (4H, m), 12.00 (1H, br-s).

Example 120

1-(3-Aminopropyl)-4-chloro-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

20     Yield: 46.0%, M.P.: 280-282°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.95-2.16 (2H, m), 2.65-2.88 (2H, m), 4.66 (2H, t, J=6.6Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.42 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 8.3Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=3.0Hz), 8.02 (3H, br-s), 8.11 (1H, s), 8.68 (2H, br-s), 8.78 (2H, br-s), 12.2 (1H, br-s).

25     Example 121

7-(2-Aminoethoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 31.9%, M.P.: 285°C

30     1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.2-3.4 (2H, m), 4.30 (3H, s), 4.33-4.37 (2H, m), 6.89 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.13 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.83 (1H, s), 8.33 (3H, br-s), 8.6-8.7 (4H, m), 12.06 (1H, br-s).

Example 122

6-(3-Aminopropoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

35     Yield: 38.7%, M.P.: 230°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.06-2.11 (2H, m), 2.97-2.99 (2H, m), 4.00 (3H, s), 4.18-4.23 (2H, m), 6.96 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 7.14 (1H, s), 7.95 (1H, s), 8.09 (3H, br-s), 8.5-8.7 (4H, m), 12.03 (1H, br-s).

Example 123

40     Synthesis of 4-hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.50 g (4.73 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxymethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 6.02 g (63.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and a solution of 3.40 g (63.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide in 60 ml of methanol. 1-Methyl-4-(2-tetrahydropyranyl)oxymethyl-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained. After the compound was dissolved in a mixture of 30 ml of 2N hydrochloric acid and 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water and the aqueous layer was rendered alkaline with 28% aqueous ammonia. The mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 4-hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine. Next, the compound was treated with hydrogen chloride/methanol to convert into the hydrochloride. 4-Hydroxymethyl-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was thus obtained in an amount of 0.58 g (44.2%).

M.P.: 226-229°C

55     1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.03 (3H, s), 4.80 (2H, s), 5.26 (1H, br-s), 7.17 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.34-7.39 (1H, m), 7.48 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.93 (1H, s), 8.48-8.60 (4H, m), 11.81 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 124 to 133 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 123.

Example 124

7-(2-Hydroxyethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 62.5%, M.P.: 243-244°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.82 (2H, br-s), 4.12-4.15 (2H, m), 4.31 (3H, s), 4.94 (1H, br-s), 6.86 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.03 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.26 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.73 (1H, s), 8.45-8.63 (4H, m), 11.82 (1H, br-s).

Example 125

10     4-Chloro-7-(2-hydroxyethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 17.7%, M.P.: 277-279°C

15      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.79-3.83 (2H, m), 4.12-4.15 (2H, m), 4.31 (3H, s), 4.9 (1H, br-s), 6.85 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.58 (4H, br-s), 11.88 (1H, br-s).

20     Example 126

6-(2-Hydroxyethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 59.8%, M.P.: 265-268°C

25      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.32-3.77 (2H, m), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.08-4.11 (2H, m), 4.91 (2H, m), 4.91 (1H, br-s), 6.81-6.85 (1H, m), 7.08 (1H, s), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 8.39-8.64 (4H, m), 11.77 (1H, br-s).

Example 127

4-Chloro-7-(2,3-dihydroxypropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 40.2%, M.P.: 237-238°C

30      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.50 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 3.88-3.91 (1H, m), 4.03 (1H, dd, J=5.6, 9.9Hz), 4.15 (1H, dd, J=4.0, 9.9Hz), 4.30 (3H, s), 6.85 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.11 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.68 (1H, s), 8.50 (4H, br-s), 11.76 (1H, br-s).

Example 128

4-Chloro-7-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 53.2%, M.P.: 210-212°C

35      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.93-2.02 (2H, m), 3.60-3.64 (2H, m), 4.15-4.20 (2H, m), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.84 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.09 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.5-8.6 (4H, m), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 129

4-Chloro-7-(4-hydroxybutoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 69.5%, M.P.: 220-222°C

40      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.59-1.67 (2H, m), 1.84-1.89 (2H, m), 3.45-3.50 (2H, m), 4.10-4.15 (2H, m), 4.29 (3H, s), 6.84 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.71 (1H, s), 8.52 (4H, br-s), 11.80 (1H, br-s).

Example 130

45     4-Chloro-1-(3-hydroxypropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 60.0%, M.P.: 213-215°C

50      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.78-1.98 (2H, m), 3.30-3.45 (2H, m), 4.61 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.68 (1H, br-s), 7.27 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.39 (1H, dd, J=7.3, 8.6Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.93 (1H, s), 8.55 (2H, br-s), 8.64 (2H, br-s), 11.96 (1H, br-s).

Example 131

4-Chloro-1-(4-hydroxybutyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 48.0%, M.P.: 226-227°C

55      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.28-1.51 (2H, m), 1.60-1.84 (2H, m), 3.37 (2H, t, J=6.6Hz), 4.44 (1H, br-s), 4.58 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.39 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 8.6Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.92 (1H, s), 8.53 (2H, br-s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 132

4-Chloro-6-(2-hydroxyethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 51.9%, M.P.: 250-252°C

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.74-3.77 (2H, m), 3.99 (3H, s), 4.11 (2H, t, J=5.0Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.13 (1H, s), 7.80 (1H, s), 8.3-8.7 (4H, m), 11.76 (1H, br-s).

Example 133

<sup>10</sup> 1-(3,4-Dihydroxybutyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 73.0%, M.P.: 219-222°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.53-1.73 (1H, m), 1.85-2.04 (1H, m), 3.12-3.55 (3H, m), 4.37-4.88 (4H, m), 7.18 (1H, t, J=7.3Hz), 7.40 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 7.3, 7.8Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.74 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.21 (2H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 11.87 (1H, br-s).

Example 134Preparation of 1-(2-carboxyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

<sup>20</sup> After 0.80 g (2.23 mmol) of 1-[2-[1-(4-methyl-2,6,7-trioxabicyclo[2.2.2]octyl)]ethyl]-2-indoloylguanidine was suspended in 80 ml of 1,2-dimethoxyethane, 8 ml of 1N hydrochloric acid was added to the suspension. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 minutes. Subsequently 10 ml of 4N sodium hydroxide solution was added to the mixture followed by stirring at room temperature for 40 minutes. Then 10 ml of 4N hydrochloric acid was added to the mixture followed by stirring at room temperature for an hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. After the resulting residue was washed with water, water was filtered off. The filtered matter was recrystallized from 0.5 N hydrochloric acid to give 0.44 g (64.0%) of 1-(2-carboxyethyl)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 254°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.72 (2H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.76 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 7.17 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.40 (1H, ddd, J=1.0, 6.9, 7.4Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.73 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.72 (2H, br-s), 12.22 (1.5H, br-s).

Example 135Preparation of 7-carboxymethoxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

<sup>35</sup> A suspension of 0.40 g (1.11 mmol) of 7-carbamoylmethoxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine obtained in Example 64 in 100 ml of 2N hydrochloric acid was refluxed for an hour. The reaction mixture was gradually cooled. The precipitated crystals were filtered and dried under reduced pressure to give 0.39 g (97.2%) of 7-carboxymethoxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 283-284°C

<sup>40</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.34 (3H, s), 4.84 (2H, s), 6.82 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.09 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.69 (1H, s), 8.48 (4H, br-s), 11.5-13.5 (1.3H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 136 and 137 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 135.

Example 136

<sup>45</sup> 7-Carboxymethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 41.5%, M.P.: 264°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.34 (3H, s), 4.84 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.03 (1H, t, J=7.9Hz), 7.30 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.47-8.63 (4H, m), 11.71-12.07 (1H, m), 12.6-13.3 (1H, m).

Example 137

<sup>50</sup> 6-Carboxymethoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 53.0%, M.P.: 298°C

<sup>55</sup> <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.97 (3H, s), 4.79 (2H, s), 6.85 (1H, dd, J=2.0, 8.9Hz), 7.09 (1H, s), 7.63 (1H, t, J=8.9Hz), 7.72 (1H, s), 8.34-8.51 (4H, m), 10-13 (2H, m).

Example 138

## Preparation of 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.10 g (0.46 mmol) of ethyl 7-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.12 g (0.50 mmol) of phenylacetaldehyde as 50% isopropanol solution, 0.043 g (0.69 mmol) of sodium cyanogen borohydride and 0.1 ml of acetic acid in 5 ml of acetonitrile was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes. Thereafter 0.2 ml of acetic acid was added to the reaction mixture. The resulting mixture was allowed to stand at room temperature for 15 hours. After 1N sodium hydroxide solution was added to the reaction mixture, the mixture was extracted three times with diethyl ether. The combined extracts were then washed with 1N potassium hydroxide solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.045 g (30.5%) of ethyl 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indolecarboxylate.

15

b) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

A mixture of 0.16 g (0.51 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.49 g (5.09 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 0.28 g (5.09 mmol) of sodium methoxide in 10 ml of methanol was reacted in a manner similar to Example 1 to give 0.075 g (39.5%) of 1-methyl-7-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

20

M.P.: 220-223°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.96-3.02 (2H, m), 3.29-3.35 (2H, m), 4.18 (3H, s), 6.60-6.95 (1H, m), 6.99 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.06 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.20-7.25 (1H, m), 7.31-7.33 (4H, m), 7.64 (1H, s), 8.42-8.59 (4H, m), 11.73 (1H, br-s).

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 138 to prepare the compound of Example 139.

25

Example 139

## 1-Methyl-6-(2-phenylethylamino)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride:

Yield: 26.6%, M.P.: 243-246°C

30

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.91-2.97 (2H, m), 3.38-3.51 (2H, m), 3.92 (3H, s), 6.70 (1H, s), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.20-7.29 (1H, m), 7.31 (4H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.35-8.63 (4H, m), 11.64 (1H, br-s).

Example 140

## 35 Preparation of 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 (25) except for using 2.60 g (10.11 mmol) of ethyl 4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.445 g (11.12 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 4.32 g (15.17 mmol) of tert-butyl N-(3-iodopropyl)-carbamate and 100 ml of dimethylformamide. Ethyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in an amount of 2.81 g (67.1%).

45

b) Preparation of 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

50

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 2.81 g (6.78 mmol) of ethyl 1-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 6.48 g (67.8 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 100 ml of a methanol solution of 3.66 g (67.8 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 1-(3-tert-Butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine was thus obtained in an amount of 2.83 g. This compound, 2.72 g, was treated in a manner similar to Example 114 to give 1.45 g (57.0%) of 1-(3-aminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride.

55

M.P.: 245°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.99-2.20 (2H, m), 2.70-2.89 (2H, m), 4.72 (2H, t, J=6.9Hz), 7.51-7.68 (2H, m), 8.06 (3H, br-s), 8.06-8.27 (2H, m), 8.71 (2H, br-s), 8.80 (2H, br-s), 12.30 (1H, br-s).

Example 141

Preparation of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

5    a) Preparation of ethyl 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

Ethyl 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained in an amount of 1.77 g (74%) in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 2.07 g (4.84 mmol) of ethyl 4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.43 g (10.7 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 1.15 g (7.26 mmol) of 3-chloropropylidimethylamine hydrochloride and 80 ml of dimethylformamide.

10    b) Preparation of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

15    1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained in an amount of 0.42 g (28%) in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.77 g (3.45 mmol) of ethyl 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 3.30 g (34.5 mmol) of guanidine dihydrochloride and 100 ml of a methanol solution of 1.87 g (34.5 mmol) of sodium methoxide.

M.P.: 252-255°C

20     $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.07-2.30 (2H, m), 2.58-2.60 (6H, m), 3.00-3.19 (2H, m), 4.59-4.81 (2H, m), 7.49-8.67 (2H, m), 8.04-8.26 (2H, m), 8.71 (2H, br-s), 8.79 (2H, br-s), 10.69 (1H, br-s), 12.29 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 142 to 147 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 141.

Example 142

25    1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 12.3%, M.P.: 240°C

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.04-2.27 (2H, m), 2.60-2.78 (6H, m), 2.98-3.17 (2H, m), 4.51-4.72 (2H, m), 7.12-7.28 (1H, m), 7.37-7.49 (1H, m), 7.75 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.07 (1H, s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 8.81 (2H, br-s), 10.50 (1H, br-s), 12.15 (1H, br-s).

30

Example 143

4-Chloro-1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 47.6%, M.P.: 237-240°C

35     $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.07-2.27 (2H, m), 2.70 (6H, d, J=1.3Hz), 3.02-3.14 (2H, m), 4.55-4.72 (2H, m), 7.30 (1H, d, J=7.3Hz), 7.38-7.48 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.06 (1H, s), 8.61 (2H, br-s), 8.68 (2H, br-s), 10.36 (1H, br-s), 12.11 (1H, br-s).

40

Example 144

1-[2-[(N-Pyrrolidinyl)ethyl]-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 23.8%, M.P.: 236-239°C

45     $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.75-2.11 (4H, m), 2.88-3.13 (2H, m), 3.40-3.68 (4H, m), 4.85-5.04 (2H, m), 7.16-7.29 (1H, m), 7.40-7.54 (1H, m), 7.78 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.87 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 8.10 (1H, s), 8.62 (2H, br-s), 8.81 (2H, br-s), 11.17 (1H, br-s), 12.24 (1H, br-s).

50

Example 145

4-Chloro-1-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethyl]-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 6.1%, M.P.: 220°C

55     $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.72-2.10 (4H, m), 2.83-3.13 (2H, m), 3.41-3.69 (4H, m), 4.86-5.05 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.45 (1H, dd, J=8.3, 7.7Hz), 7.89 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.14 (1H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 8.74 (2H, br-s), 11.35 (1H, br-s), 12.28 (1H, br-s).

60

Example 146

1-(3-Diethylaminopropyl)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 30.8%, M.P.: 222-225°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.18 (6H, t, J=6.9Hz), 2.08-2.30 (2H, m), 2.92-3.20 (6H, m), 4.57-4.80 (2H, m), 7.50-7.65 (2H, m), 8.07-8.24 (2H, m), 8.66 (2H, br-s), 8.78 (2H, br-s), 10.58 (1H, br-s), 12.30 (1H, br-s).

Example 147

5

1-[2-(N-Morpholinyl)ethyl]-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

Yield: 20.5%, M.P.: 180°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.00-3.27 (2H, m), 3.27-3.70 (4H, m), 3.70-4.10 (4H, m), 4.88-5.14 (2H, m), 7.15-7.30 (1H, m), 7.39-7.52 (1H, m), 7.78 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.90 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz), 8.10 (1H, s), 8.65 (2H, br-s), 8.81 (2H, br-s), 11.85 (1H, br-s), 12.26 (1H, br-s).

Example 148

Preparation of 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

15

a) Preparation of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

Ethyl 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained in an amount of 2.25 g in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 2.20 g (6.06 mmol) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-4-trifluoro-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.24 g (6.06 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 1.72 g (12.1 mmol) of methyl iodide and 50 ml of dimethylformamide.

b) Preparation of ethyl 6-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

25

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 15 a) except for using 2.23 g (5.91 mmol) of ethyl 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.3 g of 10% palladium/carbon and 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran. Ethyl 6-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in an amount of 1.70 g.

30

c) Preparation of ethyl 6-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indole carboxylate

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Reference Example 5 except for using 1.00 g (3.48 mmol) of ethyl 6-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.14 g (3.48 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 0.99 g (3.48 mmol) of tert-butyl N-(3-iodopropyl)carbamate and 40 ml of dimethylformamide. Ethyl 6-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in an amount of 1.28 g.

d) Preparation of 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

40

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 1.28 g (2.88 mmol) of ethyl 6-(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 5.50 g (57.6 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 60 ml of methanol solution of 3.11 g (57.6 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 6-(3-tert-Butoxycarbonylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine was thus obtained in an amount of 0.41 g. This compound, 0.41 g, was treated in a manner similar to Example 114 to give 0.27 g (21.8%) of 6-(3-aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride.

45

M.P.: 272-274°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.08-2.13 (2H, m), 2.99-3.01 (2H, m), 4.05 (3H, s), 4.24-4.28 (2H, m), 7.21 (1H, s), 7.48 (1H, s), 7.97 (1H, s), 8.07 (3H, br-s), 8.56-8.70 (4H, m), 12.6 (1H, br-s).

The compound of Example 149 was obtained in a manner similar to Example 148.

50

Example 149

6-(3-Aminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride:

M.P.: 265-267°C

55

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.04-2.09 (2H, m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.96-2.99 (2H, m), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.13-4.18 (2H, m), 6.65 (1H, s), 6.91 (1H, s), 8.00-8.04 (4H, m), 8.44 (2H, br-s), 8.73 (2H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 150

Preparation of 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

Ethyl 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained in an amount of 0.72 g in a manner similar to Reference Example 4 except for using 1.00 g (3.48 mmol) of ethyl 6-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.35 g (8.70 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 0.82 g (5.22 mmol) of 3-chloropropylidemethylamine hydrochloride and 40 ml of dimethylformamide.

10 b) Preparation of 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 1 except for using 0.72 g (1.93 mmol) of ethyl 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 3.69 g (38.7 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 50 ml of a methanol solution of 2.09 g (38.7 mmol) of sodium methoxide. 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine was thus obtained in an amount of 0.40 g. This compound, 0.40 g, was treated in a manner similar to Example 1 to give 0.31 g (35.0%) of 6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride.

20 M.P.: 264-265°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.17-2.23 (2H, m), 2.80 (6H, s), 3.2-3.4 (2H, m), 4.06 (3H, s), 4.23-4.27 (2H, m), 7.20 (1H, s), 7.50 (1H, s), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.5-8.7 (4H, m), 10.27 (1H, br-s), 11.90 (1H, br-s).

The compound of Example 151 was obtained in a manner similar to Example 150.

25 Example 151

1,4-Dimethyl-6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

M.P.: 282-284°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.14-2.20 (2H, m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.79-2.80 (6H, m), 3.1-3.3 (2H, m), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.13-4.17 (2H, m), 6.66 (1H, s), 6.93 (1H, s), 7.99 (1H, s), 8.42-8.74 (4H, m), 10.26 (1H, br-s), 11.85 (1H, br-s).

Example 152

Preparation of 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

35 a) Preparation of ethyl 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 4.00 g (18.3 mmol) of ethyl 7-amino-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 7.60 g (37.6 mmol) of 3-(benzylloxycarbonylamino)propion aldehyde, 2.43 g (38.6 mmol) of sodium cyanoborohydride, 2.1 ml of acetic acid, 5.0 g of molecular sieves 3A and 200 ml of methanol was stirred at room temperature for 4.5 hours. After 28% ammonia water was added to the reaction solution to render the system alkaline, the reaction mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was suspended in 100 ml of ethanol. After 6.40 g (101 mmol) of ammonium formate and 0.91 g of 10% palladium/carbon were added to the suspension, the mixture was heated to reflux for 8 hours. Insoluble matters were filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The thus obtained residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.04 g (24.6%) of ethyl 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

50 b) Preparation of ethyl 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.20 g (0.71 mmol) of ethyl 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.17 g (0.79 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate and 3 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for an hour. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.25 g (91.6%) of ethyl 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

55 c) Preparation of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid

A mixture of 0.12 g (0.31 mmol) of ethyl 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxy-

late, 2 ml of 5N potassium hydroxide aqueous solution and 5 ml of ethanol was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. After 2N hydrochloric acid was gradually added to the reaction solution to render the pH 6, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted three times with chloroform. The combined extracts were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.079 g (72.4%) of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid.

**d) Preparation of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine**

10 A solution of 0.068 g (0.18 mmol) of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid and 0.088 g (0.54 mmol) of carbonyldiimidazole in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature and then at 45 to 50°C for an hour. After the temperature was reverted to ambient temperature, a solution of 0.10 g (1.08 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride and 0.16 ml (1.15 mmol) of triethylamine in 5 ml of dimethylformamide was added to the reaction mixture followed by stirring at room temperature for 7 hours. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.043 g (61.2%) of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine.

**e) Preparation of 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride**

20 After 0.04 g (0.10 mmol) of 7-[(3-tert-butoxycarbonylaminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine was dissolved in 2 ml of hydrochloric acid/methanol, the solution was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. After 2N sodium hydroxide aqueous solution was added to the residue thus obtained, the mixture was extracted three times with chloroform. The combined extracts were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.023 g (80.0%) of 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine. The guanidine derivative was converted into the hydrochloride with hydrochloric acid/methanol. Recrystallization from methanol gave 7-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride.

M.P.: 282-284°C (decompd.)

30 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.96 (2H, m), 2.96 (2H, m), 3.18 (2H, m), 4.27 (3H, s), 6.59 (1H, d, J=6.9Hz), 6.96-7.09 (2H, m) 7.72 (1H, m), 8.49 (2H, m), 8.69 (2H, m).

The following compounds of Examples 153 to 169 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 150.

**Example 153**

35 1,4-Dimethyl-7-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

M.P.: 276-278°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.20-2.26 (2H, m), 2.42 (3H, s), 2.80 (6H, d, J=4.62Hz), 3.21-3.29 (2H, m), 4.13-4.18 (2H, m), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.75-6.89 (2H, m), 7.87 (1H, s), 8.46 (2H, br-s), 8.64 (2H, br-s), 10.24 (1H, br-s), 11.88 (1H, s).

**Example 154**

7-(3-Diethylaminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 235-236°C

45 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.24 (6H, t, J=7.26Hz), 2.20-2.30 (2H, m), 2.41 (3H, s), 3.14-3.28 (6H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J=5.94Hz), 4.29 (3H, s), 6.80 (2H, dd, J=7.92, 18.2Hz), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.49 (2H, br-s), 8.69 (2H, br-s), 10.27 (1H, br-s), 11.94 (1H, br-s).

**Example 155**

50 1,4-Dimethyl-7-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

M.P.: 287-288°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.91-2.04 (4H, m), 2.42 (3H, s), 3.10-3.20 (2H, m), 3.62-3.70 (4H, m), 4.29 (3H, s), 4.46 (2H, t, J=4.95Hz), 6.85 (2H, s), 7.94 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.70 (2H, br-s), 10.81 (1H, br-s), 11.97 (1H, br-s).

**Example 156**

1,4-Dimethyl-7-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride:

M.P.: 245°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.42 (3H, s), 2.88 (6H, s), 3.60-3.70 (2H, m), 4.28 (3H, s), 4.45-4.48 (2H, m), 6.84 (2H, s), 7.93 (1H, s), 8.49 (2H, br-s), 8.70 (2H, br-s), 10.51 (1H, br-s), 11.98 (1H, br-s).

Example 157

5

6-(3-Dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 225°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.10-2.28 (2H, m), 2.80 (6H, s), 3.12-3.37 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 3.95 (3H, s), 4.16 (1H, t, J=5.9Hz), 6.27 (1H, d, J=1.7Hz), 6.67-6.73 (1H, m), 7.77 (1H, br-s), 8.36 (2H, br-s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 10.10-10.28 (1H, m), 11.57 (1H, br-s)

10

Example 158

15

6-(3-Dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 255°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.33 (6H, d, J=5.9Hz), 2.10-2.28 (2H, m), 2.78 (6H, d, J=4.0Hz), 3.14-3.30 (2H, m), 3.94 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.76 (1H, sept, J=5.9Hz), 6.28 (1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 6.68 (1H, d, J=1.1Hz), 7.70 (1H, s), 8.48 (4H, br-s), 10.44-10.65 (1H, m), 11.46 (1H, br-s).

20

Example 159

25

7-(3-Dimethylaminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 243°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.13-2.31 (2H, m), 2.79 (6H, d, J=4.6Hz), 3.13-3.38 (2H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.13 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.26 (3H, s), 6.46 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 6.79 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.51 (2H, br-s), 8.56 (2H, br-s), 10.33-10.55 (1H, m), 11.73 (1H, br-s).

Example 160

30

7-(2-Dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 278-280°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.88 (6H, s), 3.67 (2H, br-s), 4.32 (3H, s), 4.59-4.63 (2H, m), 7.04 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 7.49 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.79 (1H, d, J=1.65Hz), 8.60 (4H, br-s), 10.71 (1H, br-s), 12.00 (1H, br-s).

35

Example 161

6-(2-Dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 286-288°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.86 (6H, s), 3.58 (2H, m), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.58 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.60 (1H, s), 8.07 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 8.70-8.81 (4H, m), 10.95 (1H, br-s), 12.20 (1H, br-s).

Example 162

6-(2-Diethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

45

M.P.: 287-289°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.29 (6H, t, J=7.5Hz), 3.24 (4H,m), 3.56 (2H, m), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.58 (2H, t, J=4.8Hz), 7.25 (1H, s), 7.59 (1H, s), 8.03 (1H, s), 8.63-8.76 (4H, m), 10.73 (1H, br-s), 12.16 (1H, br-s).

Example 163

50

4-Chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 261-262°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.86 (6H, s), 3.48-3.59 (2H, m), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.45-4.49 (2H, m), 7.04 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.26 (1H, s), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.39-8.63 (4H, br-s), 10.14-10.32 (1H, m), 11.82 (1H, br-s).

55

Example 164

4-Chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 277-278°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.16-2.21 (2H, m), 2.79 (6H, s), 3.23-3.26 (2H, m), 4.00 (3H, s), 4.19 (2H, t, J=5.94Hz), 6.97 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.17 (1H, s), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 10.36 (1H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

**5 Example 165**

4-Chloro-6-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 268-270°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.24-1.30 (6H, m), 3.20-3.26 (4H, m), 3.45-3.55 (2H, m), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.48-4.51 (2H, m), 7.04 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.25 (1H, br-s), 7.90 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 10.27 (1H, br-s), 11.93 (1H, br-s).

**Example 166**

4-Chloro-1-methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 272-274°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.91 (2H, br-s), 2.03 (2H, br-s), 3.12-3.26 (2H, m), 3.62 (4H, br-s), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.45-4.49 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.25 (1H, br-s), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.58 (2H, br-s), 10.60 (1H, br-s), 11.86 (1H, br-s).

**20 Example 167**

4-Chloro-7-(3-diethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 254-255°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.24 (6H, t, J=7.26Hz), 2.20-2.40 (2H, m), 3.11-3.28 (6H, m), 4.19-4.24 (2H, m), 4.29 (3H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.56 (4H, br-s), 10.26 (1H, br-s), 11.90 (1H, br-s).

**Example 168**

1-Methyl-6-[2-(N-pyrrolidinyl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 320°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.94-2.03 (4H, m), 3.15 (2H, m), 3.64 (4H, m), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.56 (1H, m), 7.27 (1H, s), 7.59 (1H, s), 8.05 (1H, s), 8.68-8.79 (4H, m), 11.21 (1H, br-s), 12.16 (1H, br-s).

**Example 169**

7-(3-Dimethylaminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 250°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.2-2.4 (2H, m), 2.79 (6H, d, J=4.62Hz), 3.1-3.3 (2H, m), 4.28-4.32 (5H, m), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.78 (1H, d, J=1.32Hz), 8.61 (4H, br-s), 10.63 (1H, br-s), 12.00 (1H, br-s).

<sup>40</sup> The following compounds of Examples 170 to 178 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 148.

**Example 170**

6-(3-Aminopropoxy)-4-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 245°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.00-2.15 (2H, m), 2.90-3.07 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 3.95 (3H, s), 4.17 (2H, t, J=6.3Hz), 6.30 (1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 6.65-6.73 (1H, m), 7.83 (1H, s), 7.98 (3H, br-s), 8.42 (2H, br-s), 8.60 (2H, br-s), 11.68 (1H, br-s).

**Example 171**

6-(3-Aminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

M.P.: 230°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.33 (6H, d, J=5.9Hz), 2.00-2.13 (2H, m), 2.90-3.07 (2H, m), 3.94 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.77 (1H, sept, J=5.9Hz), 6.30 (1H, d, J=1.3Hz), 6.63-6.70 (1H, m), 7.65 (1H, s), 7.98 (3H, br-s), 8.42 (4H, br-s), 11.37 (1H, br-s)

Example 172

7-(3-Aminopropoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 284-286°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.16-2.18 (2H, m), 3.02-3.04 (2H, m), 4.28-4.31 (5H, m), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.92Hz), 7.48 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.81 (1H, s), 8.07 (3H, br-s), 8.63 (4H, br-s), 12.03 (1H, br-s).

Example 173

10     7-(2-Aminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 291-292°C  
11      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.2-3.5 (2H, m), 4.32 (3H, s), 4.44 (2H, t, J=4.95Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.79 (1H, s), 8.30 (3H, br-s), 8.62 (4H, br-s), 12.02 (1H, br-s).

Example 174

12     7-(2-Aminoethoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 305-306°C  
13      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.49 (3H, s), 3.3-3.5 (2H, m), 4.29 (5H, m), 6.81-6.83 (2H, m), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.19 (3H, br-s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 175

14     6-(2-Aminoethoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 308-309°C  
15      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.1-3.3 (2H, m), 4.02 (3H, s), 4.32 (2H, t, J=4.95Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J=1.65Hz), 7.23 (1H, br-s), 7.90 (1H, s), 8.19 (3H, br-s), 8.51 (2H, br-s), 8.65 (2H, br-s), 11.95 (1H, br-s).

Example 176

16     7-(3-Aminopropoxy)-4-isopropoxy-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 220°C  
17      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.31 (6H, d, J=6.3Hz), 2.00-2.20 (2H, m), 2.90-3.10 (2H, m), 4.13 (2H, t, J=5.9Hz), 4.24 (1H, s), 4.67 (1H, sept, J=6.3Hz), 6.50 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 6.77 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz), 7.55-7.64 (1H, m), 7.83-8.08 (3H, m), 8.32-8.56 (4H, m), 11.64 (1H, br-s)

Example 177

18     6-(2-Aminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 289°C  
19      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.2-3.3 (2H, m), 4.07 (3H, s), 4.36-4.40 (2H, m), 7.23 (1H, s), 7.55 (1H, s), 7.99 (1H, s), 8.30 (3H, br-s), 8.57-8.72 (4H, m), 12.10 (1H, br-s).

Example 178

20     7-(3-Aminopropoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 318-320°C  
21      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.09-2.18 (2H, m), 2.41 (3H, s), 3.00 (2H, t, J=6.93Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J=5.94Hz), 4.28 (3H, s), 6.75-6.87 (2H, m), 7.95 (1H, s), 8.01-8.05 (3H, br-s), 8.51 (2H, br-s), 8.72 (2H, br-s), 11.98 (1H, br-s).  
22     The following compounds of Examples 179 to 180 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 141.

Example 179

23     1-[3-(N-Pyrrolidinyl)propyl]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 180°C  
24      $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.74-2.07 (4H, m), 2.08-2.32 (2H, m), 2.82-3.03 (2H, m), 3.08-3.25 (2H, m), 3.42-3.61 (2H, m), 4.72 (2H, t, J=5.3Hz), 7.51-7.66 (2H, m), 8.04-8.13 (2H, m), 8.68 (2H, br-s), 8.75 (2H, br-s), 10.90 (1H, br-s), 12.23 (1H, br-s).

Example 180

1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-4-fluoro-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 259-261°C

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.14-2.25 (2H, m), 2.72 (6H, s), 3.10-3.12 (2H, m), 4.61-4.66 (2H, m), 7.00 (1H, dd, J=7.59, 10.23Hz), 7.38-7.46 (1H, m), 7.61 (1H, d, J=8.58Hz), 8.11 (1H, s), 8.58 (2H, br-s), 8.73 (2H, br-s), 10.34 (1H, br-s), 12.17 (1H, br-s).

The following compound of Example 181 was prepared in a manner similar to Example 114.

Example 181

1-(3-Aminopropyl)-4-fluoro-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 277-278°C

15       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.04-2.09 (2H, m), 2.74-2.80 (2H, m), 4.63-4.68 (2H, m), 6.96-7.03 (1H, m), 7.38-7.46 (1H, m), 7.63 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.98 (3H, br-s), 8.15 (1H, s), 8.63 (2H, br-s), 8.79 (2H, br-s), 12.25 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 182 and 183 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 1.

Example 182

20      6-Benzylxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride  
M.P.: 253-255°C

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.05 (3H, s), 5.27 (2H, s), 7.26 (1H, s), 7.35-7.59 (6H, m), 7.80 (1H, s), 8.49 (4H, br-s), 11.74 (1H, br-s).

Example 183

7-Benzylxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride  
M.P.: 255-257°C

30       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.30 (3H, s), 5.36 (2H, s), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.37-7.57 (6H, m), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.54 (4H, br-s), 11.87 (2H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 184 and 185 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 91.

Example 184

35      6-Hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride  
M.P.: 268°C

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.96 (3H, s), 7.12 (1H, s), 7.16 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 8.46 (4H, br-s), 10.33 (1H, s), 11.64 (1H, br-s).

Example 185

1,4-Dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

M.P.: 267°C

45       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.37 (3H, s), 4.29 (3H, s), 6.61 (1H, d, J=7.58Hz), 6.69 (1H, d, J=7.59Hz), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.44 (2H, br-s), 8.58 (2H, br-s), 9.84 (1H, s), 11.72 (1H, br-s).

Example 186

Preparation of 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

50      a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate

After 0.42 g (1.64 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.066 g (1.64 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 5 ml of dimethylformamide, the suspension was stirred at room temperature until the mixture became an almost transparent solution. Then 0.35 g (2.49 mmol) of 1-fluoro-2-nitrobenzene was added to the solution at room temperature followed by stirring for 5 hours at the same temperature. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was

distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.53 g (94.3%) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine

5

After 2.87 g (30.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride was added to 25 ml of a methanol solution of 1.62 g (30.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The precipitated sodium chloride was filtered off. To the obtained solution was added 0.51 g (1.50 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate. Subsequently methanol was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was heated at 130°C for 5 minutes and then allowed to stand at room temperature for an hour. Thereafter water was poured onto the reaction solution and the mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.23 g (40.1%) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine.

10

c) Preparation of 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

15

A mixture of 0.23 g (0.60 mmol) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine, 0.72 g (3.20 mmol) of tin (II) chloride dihydrate and 15 ml of ethanol was heated to reflux for 3 hours. After cooling, 28% ammonia water was added to the reaction mixture and ethanol was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.11 g (51.6%) of 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine. The product was converted into the hydrochloride with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 0.097 g of 6-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 302°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.97 (3H, s), 7.04 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.11-7.17 (2H, m), 7.32-7.35 (3H, m), 7.94 (1H, s), 8.53-8.65 (4H, m).

20

Example 187

Preparation of 7-(2-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

25

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 except for using ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. 7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was thus obtained.

M.P.: 255-257°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.21 (3H, s), 6.75-6.80 (2H, m), 6.91-6.97 (1H, m), 7.05-7.12 (2H, m), 7.23 (1H, d, J=7.25Hz), 7.52 (1H, d, J=7.25Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.67 (2H, br-s), 11.99 (1H, br-s).

30

Example 188

Preparation of 7-(2-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

35

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. 7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was thus obtained.

M.P.: 286-288°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.23 (3H, s), 6.73 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 6.86 (1H, dd, J=1.32, 7.92Hz), 6.95-7.01 (1H, m), 7.08-7.14 (1H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.25-7.28 (1H, m), 7.89 (1H, s), 8.59 (2H, br-s), 8.65 (2H, br-s), 12.08 (1H, br-s).

45

50

Example 189

## Preparation of 7-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate

After 0.50 g (1.97 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.16 g (3.94 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 10 ml of dimethylformamide, the suspension was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Then 0.28 g (1.97 mmol) of 1-fluoro-3-nitrobenzene was added to the solution at room temperature followed by stirring for 3 hours at 150°C. After cooling, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.18 g (24.3%) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate.

15

b) Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 b) except for using 0.17 g (0.45 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.30 g of guanidine hydrochloride, 0.74 g (13.6 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 30 ml of methanol. 4-Chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained in the amount of 0.06 g (34.3%).

c) Preparation of 7-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl 2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

25 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 c) except for using 0.055 g (0.14 mmol) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(3-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine, 0.16 g (0.71 mmol) of tin (II) chloride dihydrate and 5 ml of ethanol. Thus, 0.036 g (59.0%) of 7-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 245°C (decompd.)

30  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.12 (3H, s), 6.27-6.59 (3H, m), 6.93 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.08-7.20 (1H, m), 7.23 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.71 (1H, s), 8.44 (4H, br-s), 11.75 (1H, m).

Example 190

## Preparation of 6-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

35 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 189 except for using ethyl 6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 6-(3-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 272°C (decompd.)

40  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.97 (3H, s), 6.62 (1H, s), 6.66 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=8.57Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.25-7.31 (1H, m), 7.37 (1H, s), 7.87 (1H, s), 8.52 (4H, m), 11.88 (1H, br-s).

Example 191

## 45 Preparation of 6-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate

50 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 a) except for using 0.41 g (1.62 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.09 g (2.23 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride, 0.34 g (2.40 mmol) of 1-fluoro-4-nitrobenzene and 5 ml of dimethylformamide. Ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate was thus obtained in an amount of 0.51 g (92.0%).

b) Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine

55 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 b) except for using 0.45 g (1.32 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate, 2.52 g (26.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride, 1.42 g (26.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 25 ml of methanol. Thus, 0.24 g (47.0%) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-

2-indoloylguanidine was obtained.

c) Preparation of 6-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

5 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 c) except for using 0.24 g (0.62 mmol) of 4-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine, 0.72 g (3.20 mmol) of tin (II) chloride dihydrate and 15 ml of ethanol. Thus, 0.089 g of 6-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 265-267°C

10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.97 (3H, s), 6.97 (1H, m), 7.06-7.19 (3H, m), 7.36 (1H, m), 8.01 (1H, d, J=0.7Hz), 8.59-8.72 (4H, m), 12.13 (2H, br-s).

Example 192

Preparation of 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

15 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 191 except for using ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 286-288°C (decompd.)

20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.12 (3H, s), 6.89-6.92 (1H, m), 7.07-7.17 (3H, m), 7.30-7.33 (2H, m), 7.56-7.59 (1H, m), 7.87 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.66 (2H, br-s), 9.50-10.20 (2H, m), 11.80-12.20 (1H, m).

Example 193

25 Preparation of 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 191 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

30 M.P.: 276-278°C (decompd.)

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.14 (3H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 7.11 (2H, d, J=8.91Hz), 7.21 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J=8.91Hz), 7.88 (1H, s), 8.60 (4H, br-s), 9.40-10.00 (2H, m), 11.80-12.20 (1H, m).

Example 194

35 Preparation of 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 191 except for using ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

40 M.P.: 264-266°C (decompd.)

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.27 (3H, s), 6.81 (1H, d, J=7.59Hz), 7.19-7.31 (4H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J=8.91Hz), 7.83 (1H, d, J=1.64Hz), 8.56 (4H, br-s).

45 Example 195

Preparation of 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

50 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 191 except for using ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 285°C (decompd.)

55  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.08 (3H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J=7.59Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=8.57Hz), 7.05 (2H, d, J=8.91Hz), 7.33 (2H, d, J=8.91Hz), 8.03 (1H, s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 8.68 (2H, br-s), 10.0 (2H, br-s), 12.0 (1H, br-s).

Example 196

Preparation of 6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-(4-formylphenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

After 1.00 g (3.94 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was added to a suspension of 0.16 g (3.94 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 30 ml of dimethylformamide, the suspension was stirred at room temperature until the mixture became an almost transparent solution. Then 0.54 g (4.34 mmol) of 4-fluoro-benzaldehyde was added to the solution at room temperature followed by stirring for 10 hours at 70°C. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.91 g (64.5%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-(4-formylphenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

15 b) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(hydroxymethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.90 g (2.52 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-formylphenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.10 g (2.52 mmol) of sodium borohydride and 20 ml of ethanol was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 0.91 g (>99%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(hydroxymethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

25 c) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(chloromethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.91 g (2.52 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(hydroxymethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.56 g (5.53 mmol) of triethylamine and 30 ml of dichloromethane was stirred under cooling at 0°C and 0.35 g (3.02 mmol) of methanesulfonyl chloride was dropwise added to the mixture. Next, the reaction temperature was elevated from 0°C to 20°C and stirring was continued at 20°C for further 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated ammonium chloride aqueous solution, with saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate aqueous solution and finally with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.70 g (73.6%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(hydroxymethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

35 d) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.67 g (1.77 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(chloromethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.17 g (2.66 mmol) of sodium azide and 30 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water followed by extracting twice with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated ammonium chloride aqueous solution and then with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. To the residue were added 50 ml of ethyl acetate, 0.10 g of 10% palladium/carbon and 0.77 g (3.54 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate. The mixture was catalytically hydrogenated at ambient temperature under normal pressure. After completion of the reaction, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.57 g (70.1%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

50 e) Preparation of 6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 b) except for using 0.55 g (1.20 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 2.29 g (24.0 mmol) of guanine hydrochloride, 1.29 g (24.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 50 ml of methanol. Thus, 0.70 g of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine was obtained. The product was added to a solution of 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid in 30 ml of dichloromethane. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was concentrated under reduced pressure and ice water was poured to the residue. After 28% ammonia water was added to the reaction solution to render the system alkaline, the reaction mixture was

extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was treated with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 0.28 g (52.5%) of 6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride.

5 M.P.: 287°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 3.97 (3H, s), 4.01 (2H, d, J=5.61Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=1.65Hz), 7.11 (2H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.35 (1H, s), 7.52 (2H, d, J=8.57Hz), 7.95 (1H, s), 8.31 (3H, br-s), 8.54-8.65 (4H, m), 12.04 (1H, br-s).

Example 197

10

Preparation of 7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 196 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

15 M.P.: 290-291°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00-4.02 (2H, m), 4.12 (3H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.07-7.10 (2H, m), 7.23 (1H, d, J=8.24Hz), 7.49-7.52 (2H, m), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.25 (3H, br-s), 8.54 (4H, br-s), 11.98 (1H, br-s).

20 Example 198

Preparation of 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-6-(4-dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

25

A mixture of 1.34 g (3.53 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(chloromethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 8.0 g of dimethylamine and 80 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at 0°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.29 g (21.2%) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

35

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 b) except for using 0.29 g (0.75 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.43 g (15.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride, 0.81 g (15.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 30 ml of methanol. Thus, 0.23 g (66.0%) of 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 275°C

40

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.69 (6H, s), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.25 (2H, br-s), 7.04 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.11 (2H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.40 (1H, d, J=1.65Hz), 7.58 (2H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.96 (1H, s), 8.54-8.66 (1H, br-s), 10.55 (1H, br-s), 12.06 (1H, br-s).

Example 199

45

Preparation of 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 198 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-7-[4-(chloromethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

50

M.P.: 279-280°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.68 (6H, d, J=3.63Hz), 4.12 (3H, s), 4.24 (2H, d, J=3.96Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J=7.91Hz), 7.11 (2H, d, J=8.91Hz), 7.23 (1H, d, J=8.24Hz), 7.59 (2H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.5-8.8 (4H, m), 10.57 (1H, br-s), 12.09 (1H, br-s).

55

Example 200

## Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

5        4-Chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine obtained as the intermediate in Example 193 was converted into the hydrochloride with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 280-282°C

10       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.04 (3H, s), 7.15 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.19-7.23 (2H, m), 7.31 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.26-8.30 (2H, m), 8.52 (4H, br-s), 11.97 (1H, s).

Example 201

## Preparation of 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

15        4-Chloro-1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine obtained as the intermediate in Example 188 was converted into the hydrochloride with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(2-nitrophenoxy)-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 176-178°C

20       $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.18 (3H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.20-7.24 (2H, m), 7.40-7.46 (1H, m), 7.70-7.77 (2H, m), 8.15 (1H, dd, J=1.65, 8.24Hz), 8.48 (4H, br-s), 11.84 (1H, s).

Example 202

## Preparation of 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 7-[4-tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl]benzyloxy-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indole carboxylate dihydrochloride

30        The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 196 a) except for using 0.44 g (1.74 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.66 g (2.58 mmol) of 4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-benzyl chloride, 0.07 g (1.74 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 20 ml of dimethylformamide. Thus, 0.61 g (73.1%) of ethyl 7-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was obtained.

b) Preparation of 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

40        The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 196 e) except for using 0.60 g (1.27 mmol) of ethyl 7-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 2.42 g (25.4 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride, 1.37 g (25.4 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 50 ml of methanol. Thus, 0.25 g (43.0%) of 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 298°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.02-4.04 (2H, m), 4.28 (3H, s), 5.29 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.50-7.60 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.35 (3H, br-s), 8.57 (4H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

45        Example 203

## Preparation of 6-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

50        The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 202 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 6-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 267°C

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00-4.04 (5H, m), 5.24 (2H, s), 7.02-7.03 (1H, m), 7.27 (1H, s), 7.49-7.56 (4H, m), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.39-8.67 (7H, m), 11.97 (1H, br-s).

55

Example 204

Preparation of 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

5 a) Preparation of ethyl 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.75 g (1.59 mmol) of ethyl 7-[4-(tert-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 50 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. Thereafter ice water was poured onto the resulting residue and 10 28% aqueous ammonia was added thereto to render alkaline (pH = 9 to 10). The mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 0.60 g (>99%) of ethyl 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

15 b) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 0.54 g (1.45 mmol) of ethyl 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.24 g (14.5 mmol) of 35% formaldehyde aqueous solution, 0.27 g (4.34 mmol) of sodium cyanogen borohydride and 20 ml of acetonitrile was stirred at room temperature for an hour. After acetic acid was added to the reaction solution to 20 render the pH 6 to 7, the mixture was stirred for further an hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and ice water was poured onto the residue obtained. Then 28% ammonia water was added to render alkaline (pH = 9 to 10). The mixture was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were then washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was isolated and purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.32 g (55.1%) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

25 c) Preparation of 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 186 b) except for using 0.28 g (0.70 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.52 g (16.0 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride, 0.86 g (16.0 mmol) of sodium methoxide and 40 ml of methanol. Thus, 0.10 g (29.3%) of 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 282°C (decompd.)

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.69 (6H, d, J=2.97Hz), 4.2-4.4 (5H, m), 5.32 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d, J=8.58Hz), 7.13 (1H, d, J=8.25Hz), 7.61 (4H, s), 7.77 (1H, s), 8.4-8.7 (4H, m), 10.60 (1H, br-s), 11.92 (1H, br-s).

Example 205

Preparation of 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

40 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 204 except for using ethyl 4-chloro-6-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate as the starting material. Thus, 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyl-oxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride was obtained.

M.P.: 263°C

45 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 2.70 (6H, s), 4.00 (3H, s), 4.28 (2H, s), 5.26 (2H, s), 7.05 (1H, d, J=1.65Hz), 7.28 (1H, s), 7.5-7.7 (4H, m), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.4-8.6 (4H, m), 10.47 (1H, br-s), 11.84 (1H, br-s).

The following compounds of Examples 206 and 207 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 186.

Example 206

50 7-(3-Aminobenzyloxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

M.P.: 230°C

55 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.30 (3H, s), 5.26 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.92-7.28 (3H, m), 7.15 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.30-7.41 (1H, m), 7.67 (1H, s), 8.47 (1H, br-s), 11.75 (1H, br-s).

Example 207

6-(3-Aminobenzyloxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

M.P.: 237°C

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.00 (3H, s), 5.24 (2H, s), 7.04 (1H, d, J=1.98Hz), 7.15 (1H, d, J=7.92Hz), 7.27-7.33 (3H, m), 7.40 (1H, t, J=7.59Hz), 7.82 (1H, s), 8.45 (2H, br-s), 8.50 (2H, br-s), 11.80 (1H, br-s).

5    Example 20B

Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(4-piperidino)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinecarboxylate

10    A mixture of 25.0 g (159 mmol) of ethyl 4-piperidinecarboxylate, 34.7 g (159 mmol) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate and 200 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature until the raw materials disappeared. Next, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted twice with dichloromethane. After washing with 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution, the organic phase was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give ethyl 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinemethanol

20    A mixture of 4.00 g (15.6 mmol) of ethyl 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinecarboxylate, 0.45 g (11.8 mmol) of lithium aluminum hydride and 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred at 0 to 5°C for an hour. After completion of the reaction, excess lithium aluminum hydride was decomposed with hydrated tetrahydrofuran and then insoluble matters were filtered off. The filtrate was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2.99 g of 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinemethanol.

25    c) Preparation of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methanesulfonyloxyethylpiperidine

30    To a mixture of 1.00 g (464 mmol) of 4-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidinemethanol, 0.94 g (9.29 mmol) of triethylamine and 20 ml of dichloromethane was dropwise added 0.59 g (5.11 mmol) of methanesulfonyl chloride at 0 to 5°C. The mixture was stirred at 0 to 5°C for a further hour. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. After washing with 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methanesulfonyloxyethylpiperidine.

35    <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.14-1.29 (2H, m), 1.46 (9H, s), 1.74 (2H, D, J=13.9Hz), 1.90-1.92 (1H, m), 2.66-2.75 (2H, m), 3.01 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, d, J=6.3Hz), 4.13-4.20 (2H, m).

d) Preparation of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate

40    After 0.20 g (0.86 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.034 g (0.86 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 10 ml of dimethylformamide were stirred at room temperature, 0.25 g (0.86 mmol) of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-methanesulfonyloxyethylpiperidine was added thereto. The mixture was stirred at 50°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. After washing with 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.32 g of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate.

e) Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine

50    After 0.89 g (9.29 mmol) of guanidine hydrochloride was added to a solution of 0.50 g (9.29 mmol) of sodium methoxide in 10 ml of methanol, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The precipitated sodium chloride was filtered off. To the thus obtained solution was added 0.20 g (0.47 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate. Subsequently methanol was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was heated at 130°C for 5 minutes and then allowed to stand at room temperature for an hour. Thereafter water was poured onto the reaction solution and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 0.07 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine.

f) Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(4-piperidino)methoxy]-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride

A mixture of 0.07 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-4-yl]methoxy]-2-indolylguanidine, 5 ml of trifluoroacetic acid and 30 ml of dichloromethane was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. After 28% ammonia water was added to render the system alkaline, the reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was then washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was treated with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 0.04 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(4-piperidino)methoxy]-2-indolylguanidine dihydrochloride.

M.P.: 313°C (decompd.)

10

Example 209Preparation of 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

15

a) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 1.00 g (3.94 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-hydroxy-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.56 g (3.94 mmol) of 1-fluoro-4-nitrobenzene, 0.16 g (3.94 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 30 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. After washing with water, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.25 g of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of ethyl 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

25

A mixture of 4.10 g (10.9 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-nitrophenoxy)-2-indolecarboxylate, 12.34 g (54.7 mmol) of tin (II) chloride dihydrate and 150 ml of ethanol was stirred at 70°C for 3 hours. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, 28% ammonia water was added to render alkaline and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. Insoluble matters were filtered off. The filtrate was washed with 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.70 g of ethyl 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

c) Preparation of ethyl 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate

35

After 2.70 g (7.83 mmol) of ethyl 7-(4-aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate was dissolved in 100 ml of acetonitrile, 6.71 g (78.3 mmol) of 35% formaldehyde aqueous solution and 1.48 g (23.5 mmol) of sodium cyanogen borohydride were added to the solution at room temperature. Acetic acid was added to the mixture to maintain the pH of the reaction solution at about 4.0. The mixture was stirred for further 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and 28% ammonia water were added to the resulting residue to render alkaline. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.57 g of ethyl 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

45

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.40-1.45 (3H, m), 2.93 (6H, s), 4.34-4.42 (5H, m), 6.57 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.70-6.85 (2H, m), 6.92-6.97 (3H, m), 7.36 (1H, s).

d) Preparation of 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

50

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 208 e) except for using 1.57 g (4.21 mmol) of ethyl 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylate. Thus, 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine was obtained. The compound was further treated with hydrogen chloride/methanol to give 1.36 g of 4-chloro-7-(4-dimethylaminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride.

M.P.: 252°C (decompd.)

55

The following compounds of Examples 210 to 213 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 186.

Example 210

7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride  
M.P.: 187°C

5

Example 211

7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

The title compound was obtained by treating with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol in Example 10 186, instead of treating with hydrogen chloride/methanol.  
M.P.: 279-280°C (decompd.)

Example 212

15 7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 260-261°C

Example 213

20 7-(2-Aminophenoxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 279-280°C (decompd.)

The following compound of Example 214 was prepared in a manner similar to Example 189.

Example 214

25 7-(3-Aminophenoxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 284-285°C

Example 215

30 Preparation of 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 7-(2-chloroethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

35 After 2.17 g (15.7 mmol) of potassium carbonate, 2.25 g (15.7 mmol) of 1-bromo-2-chloroethane and 0.05 g of potassium iodide were added to a solution of 3.00 g (10.4 mmol) of ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate in 30 ml of dimethylformamide, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. Subsequently, 1.45 g (10.4 mmol) of potassium carbonate and 0.69 g (5.2 mmol) of 1-bromo-2-chloroethane were further added thereto. The mixture was stirred at 50°C for an hour. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured into saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.31 g of ethyl 7-(2-chloroethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of ethyl 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

45 A mixture of 2.24 g (6.4 mmol) of ethyl (2-chloroethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 1.09 g (16.0 mmol) of imidazole, 0.36 g (9.0 mmol) of 60% sodium hydride and 30 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at 60 to 70°C for an hour. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured onto ice water. The resulting mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution. After drying over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.91 g of ethyl 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

50 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.27 (3H, s), 4.37 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.42-4.53 (4H, m), 6.63 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.99-7.07 (1H, m), 7.11 (1H, br-s), 7.31 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 8.3Hz), 7.34-7.38 (1H, m), 7.59 (1H, br-s).

c) Preparation of 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 208 e) except for using 1.84 g (4.82 mmol) of ethyl 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate. Thus, 0.85 g of 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained. This compound (0.50 g, 1.26 mmol) was converted into the hydrochloride with hydrochloric acid/isopropyl alcohol to give 0.58 g of 7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dihydrochloride.

M.P.: 275°C (decompd.)

The following compounds of Examples 216 to 220 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 215.

10

Example 216

1-Methyl-7-[2-(1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride  
M.P.: 270°C

15

Example 217

7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

20 The title compound was obtained in a manner similar to Example 215 c) except that methanesulfonic acid was used instead of hydrochloric acid.

M.P.: 204-205°C

Example 218

25

1-Methyl-7-[2-(1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 249-250°C

Example 219

30

1,4-Dimethyl-7-[3-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)propoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 261-262°C

Example 220

35

1,4-Dimethyl-7-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 238-240°C

Example 221

40

Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

a) Preparation of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate

45 A mixture of 3.50 g (15.5 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate, 4.14 g (30.0 mmol) of potassium carbonate, 4.26 g (30.0 mmol) of potassium iodide and dimethylformamide was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice water followed by extraction with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated sodium chloride aqueous solution and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 3.21 g of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate.

50 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 2.45 (3H, d, J=0.6Hz), 3.88 (3H, s), 4.35 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.36 (3H, s), 6.57 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 6.76 (1H, dd, J=0.6Hz, 7.6Hz), 7.25 (1H, s).

b) Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

55

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 208 e) except for using 3.21 g (13.0 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indolecarboxylate. Thus, 3.15 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained. The compound (3.15 g) was further treated with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol to give 2.83 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate.

M.P.: 256-258°C

The following compounds of Examples 222 to 231 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 221.

Example 222

5

7-Methoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

The title compound was obtained in a manner similar to Example 221 b) except that methanesulfonic acid was used instead of hydrochloric acid.

M.P.: 309-311°C (decompd.)

10

Example 223

7-Isopropoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

15 The title compound was obtained in a manner similar to Example 221 a) except that isopropyl iodide was used instead of methyl iodide.

M.P.: 258-259°C

Example 224

20

7-Methoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 269-270°C (decompd.)

Example 225

25

7-Isopropoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 238°C

Example 226

30

7-Methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 215-216°C

Example 227

35

4-Chloro-7-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 240-242°C

Example 228

40

4-Chloro-6-methoxy-1-methyl-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 271-273°C

Example 229

45

1,4-Dimethyl-7-isopropoxy-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 193-195°C

Example 230

50

1,4-Dimethyl-7-methoxy-2-indolylguanidine hydrochloride

M.P.: 268-269°C

Example 231

55

1,4-Dimethyl-6-methoxy-2-indolylguanidine methanesulfonate

M.P.: 255-257°C

Example 232

## 7-Hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 191 to give 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-  
 5 2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.  
 M.P.: 272-273°C (decompd.)

Example 233

## 10 7-Hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

The title compound was obtained in a manner similar to Example 232 except that methanesulfonic acid was used  
 instead of hydrochloric acid.  
 M.P.: 274-275°C (decompd.)

The following compounds of Examples 234 to 239 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 186.

15

Example 234

## 7-(4-Aminobenzyloxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 194-195°C (decompd.)

20

Example 235

## 7-(2-Aminobenzyloxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 198-200°C

25

Example 236

## 7-(3-Aminobenzyloxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 233-234°C

30

Example 237

## 7-(4-Aminobenzyloxy)-1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 160-162°C

35

Example 238

## 7-(2-Aminobenzyloxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 202-203°C (decompd.)

40

Example 239

## 7-(3-Aminobenzyloxy)-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

M.P.: 238-239°C (decompd.)

45

Example 240

## 1-Methyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

The title compound was obtained by treating 1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine obtained in Example 1 with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol.  
 50 M.P.: 218°C

Example 241

## 55 Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

The title compound was obtained by treating 1,4-dimethyl-2-indoloylguanidine obtained in Example 9 with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol.

M.P.: 251-252°C

The following compounds of Examples 242 and 243 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 1.

Example 242

5

1-Isopropyl-7-methoxy-4-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 177-178°CExample 243

10

1-Propyl-7-methoxy-4-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 183-184°CExample 244

15

1,4-Dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

a) Preparation of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate

20 A mixture of 2.00 g (8.57 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-hydroxy-2-indolecarboxylate, 4.74 g (34.3 mmol) of potassium carbonate, 1.55 g (9.43 mmol) of 2-picolyli chloride hydrochloride and 40 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at 50°C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into 5% sodium chloride aqueous solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. After washing with 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate aqueous solution, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 2.54 g of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate.

25  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.40-1.62 (3H, m), 2.46 (3H, d,  $J=1.0\text{Hz}$ ), 4.37 (2H, dd,  $J=7.3\text{Hz}, 14.2\text{Hz}$ ), 4.45 (3H, s), 5.32 (2H, s), 6.65 (1H, d,  $J=7.6\text{Hz}$ ), 6.73-6.76 (1H, m), 7.23-7.27 (2H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J=7.9\text{Hz}$ ), 7.70-7.77 (1H, m), 8.61-8.64 (1H, m).

30

b) Preparation of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate

35 The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 208 e) except for using 2.50 g (7.71 mmol) of ethyl 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indolecarboxylate. Thus, 2.10 g of 1,4-dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-2-yl)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained. The compound (2.10 g) was further treated with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol to give 3.24 g of the title compound.

M.P.: 227-228°C

The following compounds of Examples 245 to 248 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 244.

40

Example 2451,4-Dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-3-yl)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 217-218°C

45

Example 2461,4-Dimethyl-7-[(pyridin-4-yl)methoxy]-2-indoloylguanidine dimethanesulfonate  
M.P.: 154-155°C

50

Example 2477-[(Furan-2-yl)methoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride  
M.P.: 215°C

55

Example 2487-[(Furan-2-yl)methoxy]-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 146°C

The following compounds of Examples 249 to 252 were prepared in a manner similar to Example 84.

Example 249

- 5        1-Methyl-7-(4-morpholino)-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 245-246°C

Example 250

- 10      4-Chloro-1-methyl-7-(4-morpholino)-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 246-247°C

Example 251

- 15      1,4-Dimethyl-7-(4-morpholino)-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 244-245°C

Example 252

- 20      4-Chloro-7-dimethylamino-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate  
M.P.: 252-253°C

Example 253

- 25      Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

a) Preparation of ethyl 7-cyanomethoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 4.00 g (13.9 mmol) of ethyl 7-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 4.23 g (30.6 mmol) of potassium carbonate, 1.26 g (16.7 mmol) of chloroacetonitrile and 60 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Insoluble matters were filtered off. The filtrate was poured onto ice water followed by extraction with diethyl ether. The extract was washed with water and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 4.50 g of ethyl 7-cyanomethoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

b) Preparation of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine

A mixture of 1.00 g (3.1 mmol) of ethyl 7-cyanomethoxy-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.20 g (3.1 mmol) of sodium azide, 0.16 g (3.1 mmol) of ammonium chloride and 6 ml of dimethylformamide was stirred at 80°C for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water. After the mixture was rendered acidic with 2N hydrochloric acid, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. By crystallizing the resulting residue from ethyl acetate, 1.00 g of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

1H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 1.32-1.38 (3H, m), 4.30-4.38 (5H, m), 5.75 (2H, s), 7.09 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.18 (1H, dd, J=1.7Hz, 3.3Hz), 7.46 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 8.3Hz).

c) Preparation of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

A mixture of 1.00 g (2.7 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate, 0.75 g (2.7 mmol) of chlorotriphenylmethane, 0.82 g (8.12 mmol) of triethylamine and 30 ml of tetrahydrofuran was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Insoluble matters were filtered off and the filtrate was distilled off under reduced pressure to give ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate. The product was employed without purification.

d) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid

Ethyl 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate obtained in

c) above was added to a mixture of 10 ml of ethanol and 15 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide followed by stirring at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and water was added to the resulting residue. The pH of the mixture was adjusted to 6 with acetic acid followed by extraction with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to give 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid.

5           <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.19 (3H, s), 5.72 (2H, s), 6.98-7.43 (18H, m).

e) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride

10          The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 84 except for using 1.60 g (2.7 mmol) of 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid. Thus, 1.26 g of 1-methyl-7-[(1H-(1-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine. The compound was added to hydrochloric acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol. After the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 30 minutes, insoluble matters were filtered off. The filtrate was cooled to precipitate solids. The solids were taken out by filtration and dried under reduced pressure to give 1-methyl-7-[(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)methoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine hydrochloride.

15          M.P.: 288-290°C (decompd.)

Example 254

20          Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

a) Preparation of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate

25          After 1.28 g (9.69 mmol) of 2,5-dimethoxyfuran was added to a solution of 2.91 g (8.81 mmol) of ethyl 7-(2-aminoethoxy)-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate in 30 ml of acetic acid, the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours and at 70°C for further an hour. Toluene was added to the reaction mixture followed by concentration under reduced pressure. Ice water was poured onto the resulting residue. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography to give 1.96 g of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate.

30          <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.41 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 4.28 (3H, s), 4.37 (2H, q, J=7.3Hz), 4.40 (4H, br-s), 6.18 (1H, dd, J=2.0Hz, 2.3Hz), 6.61 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 6.75 (1H, dd, J=2.0Hz, 2.3Hz), 7.28 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 8.3Hz), 7.33-7.37 (1H, m).

35          b) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid

40          After 1.94 g (5.10 mmol) of ethyl 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylate was dissolved in a mixture of 100 ml of ethanol and 50 ml of tetrahydrofuran, 10 ml of 3.75 N sodium hydroxide was added thereto. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for an hour. After completion of the reaction, the mixture was rendered acidic with 2 N hydrochloric acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. To the concentrate was added 100 ml of water. The mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Crystallization of the resulting residue from chloroform/ethyl acetate gave 1.09 g of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid.

45          <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 4.16(3H, s), 4.34-4.52 (4H, m), 6.01 (1H, dd, J=2.0Hz, 2.3Hz), 6.88 (2H, dd, J=2.0Hz, 2.3Hz), 6.92 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.09-7.14 (1H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 8.3Hz), 13.26 (1H, br-s).

c) Preparation of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate

50          The reaction was carried out in a manner similar to Example 84 except for using 1.00 g (2.84 mmol) of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid. Thus, 0.91 g of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine was obtained. The compound was treated with methanesulfonic acid/hydrated isopropyl alcohol to give 0.70 g of 1-methyl-7-[2-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)ethoxy]-4-trifluoromethyl-2-indoloylguanidine methanesulfonate.

55          M.P.: 216-217°C.

Experiment 1Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity in vitro: Method:

5 The experiment was performed by modifying the method of Yamori et al. described in J. Hypertension, 8, 153 (1990). That is, inhibition of the Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity was evaluated by the change in intracellular pH during acid loading, using the vascular smooth muscle cells isolated from the rat thoracic aorta.

Results:

10 The results of IC<sub>50</sub> for the inhibition of the Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity tested are shown in Table 1 below.

Table 1

Compound	IC <sub>50</sub> (-M)
Compound of Example 1	0.058
Compound of Example 8	0.05
Compound of Example 22	2.1
Compound of Example 29	0.0009
Compound of Example 55	0.02
Compound of Example 118	0.01
Dimethyl amiloride for comparison	0.60
5-Hexamethylene amiloride for comparison	0.14

Experiment 2Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity in vitro Method:

25 The experiment was performed by modifying the method of Mungre et al. described in Exp. Cell Res., 193, 236 (1991). That is, inhibition of the Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity was evaluated by the change in cell viability during acid loading, using the vascular smooth muscle cells isolated from the rat thoracic aorta.

Results:

30 The compounds of the present invention shown in Examples were evaluated by the minimum effective concentration (MEC) for the inhibition of the Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity. The results are shown in Table 2.

40

45

50

55

Table 2. Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Exchanger Activity

	<u>Compound</u>	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger MEC (μM)		<u>Compound</u>	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger MEC (μM)
5	Example 1	1.0		Example 25	0.3
10	Example 2	10		Example 26	0.3
	Example 3	>10		Example 27	3.0
15	Example 4	>10		Example 28	>10
	Example 5	0.03		Example 29	0.03
20	Example 6	0.3		Example 30	1.0
	Example 7	0.3		Example 31	>10
	Example 8	0.3		Example 32	>10
25	Example 9	0.1		Example 33	1.0
	Example 10	10		Example 34	3.0
30	Example 11	0.3		Example 35	1.0
	Example 12	0.3		Example 36	0.1
	Example 13	1.0		Example 37	*
35	Example 14	>10		Example 38	3.0
	Example 15	0.3		Example 39	0.3
40	Example 16	3.0		Example 40	1.0
	Example 17	3.0		Example 41	1.0
	Example 18	10		Example 42	10
45	Example 19	>10		Example 43	10
	Example 20	1.0		Example 44	>10
50	Example 21	1.0		Example 45	>10
	Example 22	0.3		Example 46	*
	Example 23	0.3		Example 47	3.0
55	Example 24	0.3		Example 48	3.0

Table 2. cont'd

	<u>Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Exchanger</u>	<u>Compound</u>	<u>Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Exchanger</u>	<u>Compound</u>	
	<u>MEC (μM)</u>		<u>MEC (μM)</u>		
5					
10		Example 49	3.0	Example 74	0.1
15		Example 50	1.0	Example 75	0.3
20		Example 51	1.0	Example 76	0.3
25		Example 52	1.0	Example 77	0.3
30		Example 53	1.0	Example 78	>10
35		Example 54	0.3	Example 79	3.0
40		Example 55	0.1	Example 80	3.0
45		Example 56	0.03	Example 81	>10
50		Example 57	1.0	Example 82	3.0
55		Example 58	0.3	Example 83	0.3
		Example 59	1.0	Example 84	1.0
		Example 60	*	Example 86	10
		Example 61	0.3	Example 87	1.0
		Example 62	>10	Example 88	>10
		Example 63	0.3	Example 89	>10
		Example 64	0.01	Example 90	10
		Example 65	0.3	Example 91	3.0
		Example 66	0.3	Example 92	0.3
		Example 67	1.0	Example 93	1.0
		Example 68	*	Example 94	1.0
		Example 69	3.0	Example 95	0.003
		Example 70	3.0	Example 96	0.03
		Example 71	0.03	Example 97	>10
		Example 72	0.1	Example 98	>10
		Example 73	0.3	Example 99	10

Table 2. cont'd

	<u>Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Exchanger</u>	<u>Compound</u>	<u>Inhibition of Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> Exchanger</u>
	<u>MEC (μM)</u>		<u>MEC (μM)</u>
5			
Example 100	3.0	Example 122	0.03
10 Example 101	>10	Example 123	3.0
Example 102	10	Example 124	0.3
15 Example 103	>10	Example 125	0.01
Example 104	>10	Example 126	0.3
20 Example 105	*	Example 127	0.1
Example 106	*	Example 128	0.03
25 Example 107	0.1	Example 129	0.03
Example 108	>10	Example 130	0.03
30 Example 109	1.0	Example 131	0.1
Example 110	0.3	Example 132	0.1
35 Example 111	10	Example 133	1.0
Example 112	>10	Example 134	0.3
40 Example 113	3.0	Example 135	0.1
Example 114	1.0	Example 136	1.0
45 Example 115	>10	Example 137	>1
Example 116	>10	Example 138	3.0
50 Example 117	0.3	Example 139	3.0
Example 118	0.01	Example 140	1.0
Example 119	0.1	Example 141	0.3
Example 120	0.1	Example 142	3
55 Example 121	0.1	Example 143	0.3

Table 2. cont'd

	<u>Compound</u>	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger MEC (μM)		<u>Compound</u>	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger MEC (μM)
5	Example 144	>10		Example 166	0.1
10	Example 145	10		Example 167	0.03
15	Example 146	10		Example 168	0.03
20	Example 147	>10		Example 169	0.03
25	Example 148	0.1		Example 170	0.3
30	Example 149	0.3		Example 171	0.3
35	Example 150	0.1		Example 172	0.01
40	Example 151	0.3		Example 173	0.03
45	Example 152	0.3		Example 174	0.1
50	Example 153	0.3		Example 175	0.03
55	Example 154	0.3		Example 176	0.1
60	Example 155	0.3		Example 177	0.01
65	Example 156	0.3		Example 178	0.1
70	Example 157	0.3		Example 179	0.3
75	Example 158	0.1		Example 180	1
80	Example 159	1.0		Example 181	1
85	Example 160	0.1		Example 182	0.3
90	Example 161	0.03		Example 183	*
95	Example 162	0.1		Example 184	0.003
100	Example 163	0.1		Example 185	0.1
105	Example 164	0.03		Example 186	0.003
110	Example 165	0.1		Example 187	0.1

\* : not measurable due to cytotoxicity

Table 2. cont'd

	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger Compound	MEC (μM)	Inhibition of Na <sup>+</sup> /H <sup>+</sup> Exchanger Compound	MEC (μM)
5	Example 188	0.03	Example 199	0.01
10	Example 189	0.01	Example 200	0.01
15	Example 190	0.01	Example 201	0.01
20	Example 191	0.01	Example 202	0.003
25	Example 192	0.01	Example 203	0.001
30	Example 193	0.003	Example 204	0.003
35	Example 194	0.1	Example 205	0.003
40	Example 195	0.01	Example 206	0.03
45	Example 196	0.001	Example 207 Dimethyl amiloride	0.01
50	Example 197	0.003	amiloride	3.0
55	Example 198	0.001	5-Hexamethylene amiloide	0.3

\* : not measurable due to cytotoxicity

35

### Experiment 3

#### Inhibition of Ischemia- and Reperfusion-induced Arrhythmia in vivo

40

##### Method:

The experiment was performed by modifying the method of Crome et al. described in J. Cardiovasc. Pharmacol., 8, 1249 (1986). That is, the prevention of arrhythmia induced by reperfusion after rat coronary artery occlusion was evaluated by the incidence of ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation as well as the mortality.

45

##### Results:

The compound of Example 1 in the present invention was evaluated by the method described above, with respect to the incidence of ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation, and mortality. The results are shown in Table 3 below.

55

Table 3. Inhibition of Reperfusion-induced Arrhythmia

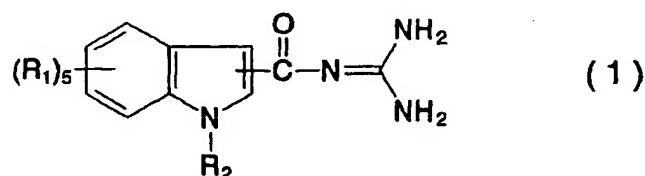
Compound	Dose (mg/kg)	Incidence of Ventricular Tachycardia (%)	Incidence of Ventricular Fibrillation (%)	Mortality (%)
Example 1	0.3	50	0	0
	0.1	70	10	10
EIPA*	1	43	0	0
	0.3	100	56	44
Control**	-	100	95	76

**Example****\*EIPA : 5-N-ethyl-N-isopropyl amiloride****\*\* Control: untreated**

The indolylguanidine derivatives of formula (1) inhibit the Na+/H+ exchanger activity and are useful for the prevention and treatment of diseases caused by the increased Na+/H+ exchanger activity, e.g., hypertension, arrhythmia, angina pectoris, cardiac hypertrophy, diabetes mellitus, organ disorders associated with ischemia or cardiac ischemic reperfusion injury, disorders associated with cerebral ischemia, etc.

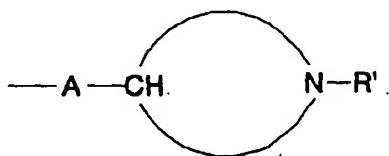
**Claims**

1. An indolylguanidine derivative of formula (I):



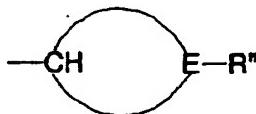
wherein:

each R<sub>1</sub>, which may be the same or different, is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, arylalkanoyl having up to 10 carbon atoms, aroyl having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> wherein R<sub>40</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, or an aromatic group, and a group of formula:



wherein A is oxygen,  $-S(O)_n-$  or  $-N(R_{50})-$ , in which  $R_{50}$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl;  $R'$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl or substituted  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl; and the ring is a saturated 3 to 8-membered heterocycle containing one nitrogen atom;

5       $R_2$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl, hydroxy,  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy, an aromatic group or  $-CH_2R_{20}$  in which  $R_{20}$  is  $C_2-C_6$  alkenyl or  $C_2-C_6$  alkynyl;  
 $R_3$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl, an aromatic group or  $-CH_2R_{30}$ , in which  $R_{30}$  is  $C_2-C_6$  alkenyl or  $C_2-C_6$  alkynyl;  
 each of  $R_6$  and  $R_7$ , which may be the same or different, is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group or  $-CH_2R_{60}$  in which  $R_{60}$  is  $C_2-C_6$  alkenyl or  $C_2-C_6$  alkynyl; or  $R_6$  and  $R_7$ , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring; and  
 n is 0, 1 or 2;  
 the said substituted  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl group bearing one or more substituents selected from halogen, hydroxy,  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy, cyano, carboxyl,  $C_2-C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group, and  $-CONR_4R_5$  in which each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$ , which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl; or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$ , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring;  $-NR_6R_7$  wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are as defined above; and a group of formula:



25      wherein E is nitrogen or a CH group, and  
 $R''$  is hydrogen, unsubstituted  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl or  $C_1-C_8$  substituted by hydroxy;  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy, cyano, carboxyl,  $C_2-C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group, a group  $-NR_6R_7$  wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are as defined above, or a group  $-CONR_4R_5$  in which each of  $R_4$  and  $R_5$ , which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl, or  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring; and the ring is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated heterocycle containing one nitrogen atom;  
 the said aromatic group being an aryl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms, a 5- or 6-membered hetero-aryl group containing 1 or 2 nitrogen atoms and one heteroatom which is oxygen or sulfur, or furyl; and  
 the above-defined aromatic groups being unsubstituted or substituted by  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl, substituted  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl as defined above, halogen, nitro,  $C_2-C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl,  $-OR_3$ ,  $-NR_6R_7$ ,  $-CONR_6R_7$ ,  $-SO_2NR_6R_7$  or  $-S(O)_nR_{40}$  wherein  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ , n and  $R_{40}$  are as defined above;  
 40      with the proviso that each  $R_1$  and the guanidinocarbonyl moiety may be at any position on either one of the 5- and 6-membered rings of the indole nucleus; or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt thereof.

2. A compound according to claim 1 wherein  $R_1$  is selected from hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_2-C_6$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_6$  alkynyl,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro,  $C_2-C_8$  alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl,  $C_2-C_6$  alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group,  $-OR_3$ ,  $-NR_6R_7$ ,  $-SO_2NR_6R_7$  and  $-S(O)_nR_{40}$ .

3. A compound according to claim 1 or 2 wherein:

50       $R_2$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl, hydroxy,  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy or  $-CH_2R_{20}$ ;  
 $R_3$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl or  $-CH_2R_{30}$  in which  $R_{30}$  is  $C_2-C_6$  alkenyl or  $C_2-C_6$  alkynyl;  
 each of  $R_6$  and  $R_7$ , which may be the same or different, is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted,  $C_3-C_7$  cycloalkyl or  $-CH_2R_{60}$ ; or  $R_6$  and  $R_7$ , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other heteroatoms in the ring; and

R<sub>40</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted.

4. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein:

5 R<sub>1</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, carboxyl, an aryl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkylsulfonyl group, -OR<sub>3</sub> or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>;

10 R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted; and each or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl or an aryl group having up to 11 carbon atoms; or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring.

15 5. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by hydroxy or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> polyhaloalkyl group, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, carboxyl, phenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkylsulfonyl or -OR<sub>31</sub> in which R<sub>31</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by hydroxy, carboxyl, phenyl, carbamoyl, a mono- or di-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkylcarbamoyl group, or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>.

20 6. A compound according to any of the preceding claims, wherein:

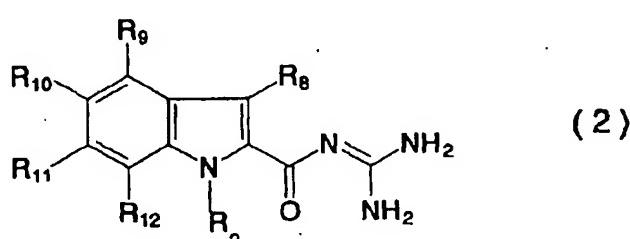
R<sub>1</sub> is a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> polyhaloalkyl group, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, halogen, nitro or -OR<sub>32</sub> in which R<sub>32</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by hydroxy, carbamoyl, a mono- or di-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkylcarbamoyl group, or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>.

25 7. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims wherein

R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, hydroxy or alkoxy.

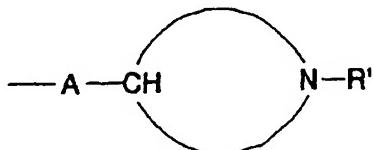
30 8. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the guanidinocarbonyl substituent is at the 2-position of the indole ring system.

35 9. A compound according to claim 1, wherein the indolylguanidine derivative has the general formula (2):



45 wherein:

each of R<sub>8</sub>, R<sub>9</sub>, R<sub>10</sub>, R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aryl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxycarbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>, or a group of formula:



wherein A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R' is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl

which is unsubstituted or substituted; and the ring is a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, an aromatic group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>;

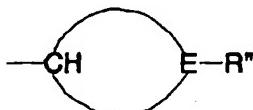
5 R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, an aromatic group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or alkynyl;

10 each of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>60</sub> in which R<sub>60</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl; or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring;

15 R<sub>40</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted;

n is 0, 1 or 2; and

20 R<sub>20</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl; the said substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group bearing one or more substituents selected from halogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, cyano, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aryl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group, or -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring; -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; or a group of formula:



25

in which:

E is nitrogen or a CH group and

30 R'' is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, cyano, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aryl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> wherein R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub> are as defined above, or -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring; and the ring of

35



is a 3- to 8-membered saturated aliphatic ring or saturated hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom; the said aromatic group being an aryl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms, a hetero-aryl group containing 1 to 2 nitrogen atoms and one heteroatom which is oxygen or sulfur, or furyl; and the above-defined aromatic groups being unsubstituted or substituted by C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> wherein R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>7</sub>, n and R<sub>40</sub> are as defined above.

45

10. A compound according to claim 9, wherein R<sub>8</sub> is hydrogen and R<sub>10</sub> is hydrogen or halogen.

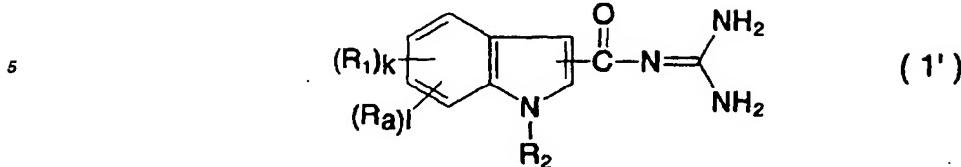
11. A compound according to claim 9 or 10, wherein R<sub>9</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> polyhaloalkyl group, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkenyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkylsulfonyl or -OR<sub>33</sub>, in which R<sub>33</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl or an aralkyl group.

50 12. A compound according to any one of claims 9 to 11 wherein each of R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted by hydroxy or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> polyhaloalkyl group, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, -OR<sub>3</sub> or -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>.

55

13. A compound according to any one of claims 9 to 12 wherein R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, hydroxy or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy.

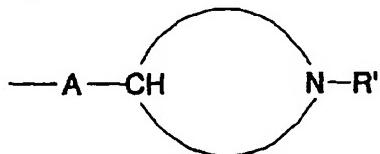
## 14. An indoloylguanidine derivative of general formula (1'):



10 wherein:

each of k and l is an integer of 1 to 4 provided that k+l=5;

each R<sub>1</sub> which may be the same or different, is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> wherein R<sub>40</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted; and a group of formula:



25 wherein A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R' is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted; and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom;

30 R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, an aromatic group or CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub> wherein R<sub>20</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl;

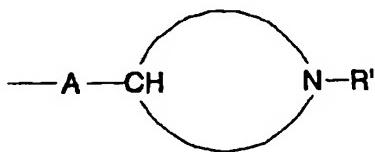
35 when R<sub>2</sub> is an aromatic group, then each R<sub>a</sub> is selected from the options defined above for R<sub>1</sub>;

40 when R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>,

then each R<sub>a</sub>, which may be the same or different, is an aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a hetero-aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or

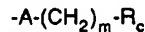
45 R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula: -A-R<sub>b</sub> in which A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R<sub>b</sub> is an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carboxyl, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or

50 R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula:



55 wherein A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, R' is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted; and the ring represents a saturated 3 to 8-membered hetero ring containing one nitrogen atom; or,

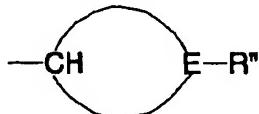
50 R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula:



wherein A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R<sub>c</sub> is an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group in which the aryl moiety and the hetero-aryl group may bear one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -OR<sub>31</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; m is an integer of 1 to 8; and R<sub>31</sub> is substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl;

R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, an aromatic group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub>

in which R<sub>30</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl;  
 each of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>60</sub> in which R<sub>60</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl; or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other heteroatoms in the ring; and  
 n is 0, 1 or 2;  
 the substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl bearing one or more substituents selected from halogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, cyano, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, an aromatic group, and -CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>5</sub> in which each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, or R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring; -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; or a group of formula:



as defined in claim 1; and  
 the aromatic groups, and the optional substituents thereof, being as defined in claim 1;  
 with the proviso that each R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>a</sub>, and the guanidinocarbonyl moiety, may be at any position on either one of the 5- and 6-membered rings of the indole nucleus; or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt thereof.

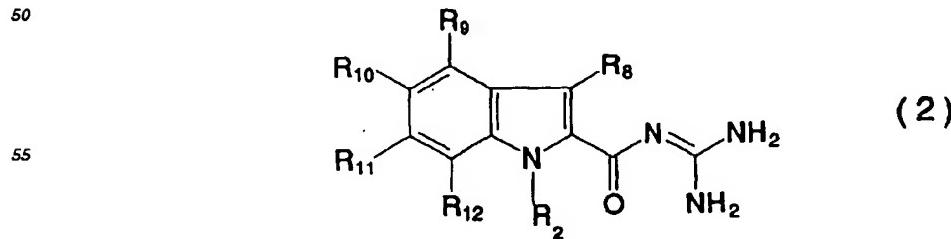
25 15. A compound according to claim 14, wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; and  
 each R<sub>a</sub>, which may be the same or different, is an aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a hetero-aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted as defined in claim 14, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or  
 35 R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula -A-R<sub>b</sub> or -A-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-R<sub>c</sub> as defined in claim 14.

16. A compound according to claim 14 or 15, wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; and  
 R<sub>a</sub> is an aralkyl or hetero-aralkyl group, the aryl moiety in either case bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or  
 R<sub>a</sub> is a group -A-R<sub>b</sub> as defined in claim 14.

17. A compound according to claim 14, wherein the indoloylguanidine derivative has the general formula (2):



wherein:

5      R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub>; each of R<sub>8</sub>, R<sub>9</sub>, R<sub>10</sub>, R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>1</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> or a group R<sub>a</sub> as defined in claim 14, with the proviso that at least one of R<sub>8</sub>, R<sub>9</sub>, R<sub>10</sub>, R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub> is a group R<sub>a</sub>.

10     18. A compound according to claim 17, wherein R<sub>8</sub> is hydrogen, R<sub>9</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; and each of R<sub>10</sub>, R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen or a group R<sub>a</sub>.

15     19. A compound according to claim 17 or 18, wherein R<sub>10</sub> is hydrogen, and each of R<sub>11</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>, which may be the same or different, is a group R<sub>a</sub>.

20     20. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 19, wherein R<sub>9</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, halogen, nitro or -OR<sub>3</sub>.

25     21. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 19 wherein R<sub>a</sub> is an aralkyl group which is unsubstituted or substituted by C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>; or R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula: -A-R<sub>b</sub> in which A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- and R<sub>b</sub> is an aryl group which optionally bears one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub>.

30     22. An indoloylguanidine derivative selected from:

- (1) 7-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (2) 7-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (3) 6-[4-(aminomethyl)benzyloxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (4) 6-[4-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-4-chloro-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (5) 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (6) 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (7) 4-chloro-7-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine
- (8) 4-chloro-6-[4-(dimethylaminomethyl)benzyloxy]-1-methyl-2-indoloylguanidine

40     and the pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts thereof.

23. A compound according to claim 14, wherein:

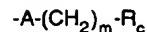
45     each R<sub>1</sub>, which may be the same or different, is selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aroyl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, carboxyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, an aromatic group, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> or -S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>40</sub> wherein R<sub>40</sub> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted;

50     R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>20</sub> or an aromatic group;

each R<sub>a</sub>, which may be the same or different, is an aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group or a hetero-aryl-C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; or

55     R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula: -A-R<sub>b</sub>, in which A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R<sub>b</sub> is an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted with -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, halogen, nitro, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -OR<sub>3</sub>, -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub> and -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, or

R<sub>a</sub> is a group of formula:



wherein A is oxygen, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>- or -N(R<sub>50</sub>)- in which R<sub>50</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl; R<sub>c</sub> is an aryl group or a hetero-aryl group, the aryl moiety in either case optionally bearing one or more substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl substituted with -NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyl, -CONR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -OR<sub>31</sub> and -SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>7</sub>; m is 1 to 8; and R<sub>31</sub> is substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl;

R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl or -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>30</sub> in which R<sub>30</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl; and each of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, which may be the same or different, is hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl which is unsubstituted or substituted, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkanoyl, an arylalkanoyl group having up to 10 carbon atoms, an aryl group having up to 11 carbon atoms, or a group -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>60</sub> in which R<sub>60</sub> is C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl; or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>, together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a saturated 5- to 7-membered cyclic amino group which may contain one or more other hetero atoms in the ring.

- 15 24. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and, as an active ingredient, an indoloylguanidine derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt thereof as defined in any one of claims 1 to 23.
- 20 25. An indoloylguanidine derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid additional salt thereof, as defined in any one of claims 1 to 23, for use as a therapeutic agent in the treatment or prevention of a disease caused by increased Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity.
- 25 26. A compound according to claim 25, for use in the treatment or prevention of hypertension, arrhythmia, angina pectoris, cardiac hypertrophy, diabetes, disorders associated with ischemia or ischemic reperfusion, cerebro-ischemic disorders; or diseases caused by excessive cell proliferation.
- 30 27. Use of an indoloylguanidine derivative or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt thereof, as defined in any one of claims 1 to 23, in the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment or prevention of a disease caused by increased Na<sup>+</sup>/H<sup>+</sup> exchanger activity.

35

40

45

50

55

**EP 0 708 091 A1**